

BÀI TẬP TIẾNG ANH

LỚP

8

Có đáp án



BÙI VĂN VINH (Chủ biên)

DƯƠNG THỊ HỒNG DIỆP

BÀI TẬP TIẾNG ANH

LỚP 8

CÓ ĐÁP ÁN

(Theo chương trình Tiếng Anh mới nhất của Bộ giáo dục và Đào tạo)

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

LỜI NÓI ĐẦU

Sách **Bài tập Tiếng Anh lớp 8** dựa vào phương pháp dạy ngôn ngữ giao tiếp (Communicative Language Teaching Method). Cuốn sách tập trung vào việc phát triển các kỹ năng ngôn ngữ cho học sinh Trung học cơ sở thông qua các dạng bài bổ ích, trong đó tập trung vào luyện ngữ âm, từ vựng, kỹ năng đọc hiểu, viết và sử dụng ngôn ngữ tổng hợp thông qua các bài kiểm tra (Tests), giúp cho người học có khả năng tổng hợp kiến thức hiệu quả nhất.

Mỗi bài học trong cuốn sách **Bài tập Tiếng Anh lớp 8** được biên soạn theo chủ điểm quen thuộc với học sinh Trung học cơ sở.

Mỗi đơn vị bài học được chia thành 3 mục lớn như sau:

PART 1: GRAMMAR REVIEW

PART 2: PRATICE

A. PHONETICS

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

C. READING

D. WRITING

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

Sách **Bài tập Tiếng Anh lớp 8** được biên soạn dựa trên thực tiễn của việc dạy và học tiếng Anh. Đây là nguồn tài liệu tham khảo bổ ích cho giáo viên và học sinh và rất thiết thực trong giao lưu quốc tế nhằm nâng cao khả năng sử dụng ngôn ngữ tiếng Anh trong thời kỳ hội nhập. Tác giả mong nhận được những ý kiến đóng góp của các nhà giáo, đồng nghiệp, phụ huynh học sinh và độc giả quan tâm để cuốn sách ngày một hoàn thiện hơn.

Trân trọng!

Unit 1

LEISURE ACTIVITIES

PART 1: vocabulary and GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

Word	Type	Pronunciation	Meaning
adore	(v)	/ə'dɔː/	yêu thích, mê thích
addicted	(adj)	/ə'dɪktɪd/	nghiện (thích) cái gì
beach game	(n)	/bi:tʃ geɪm /	trò thể thao trên bãi biển
bracelet	(n)	/'breɪslət/	vòng đeo tay
communicate	(v)	/kə'mjuːnɪkeɪt/	giao tiếp
community centre	(n)	/kə'mjuːnəti 'sentə/	trung tâm văn hoá cộng đồng
craft	(n)	/kra:ft/	đồ thủ công
craft kit	(n)	/kra:ft kɪt/	bộ dụng cụ làm thủ công
cultural event	(n)	/'kʌltʃərəl ɪ'vent/	sự kiện văn hoá
detest	(v)	/dɪ'test/	ghét
DIY	(n)	/diː aɪ 'waɪ/	đồ tự làm, tự sửa
don't mind	(v)	/dəʊnt maɪnd/	không ngại, không ghét lắm
hang out	(v)	/hæŋ aʊt/	đi chơi với bạn bè
be hooked on sth	(phr)	/bi hʊkt ɒn/	đam mê/nghiện cái gì
It's right up my street!	(idiom)	/ɪts raɪt ʌp maɪ stri:t/	Đúng vị của tớ!
join	(v)	/dʒɔɪn/	tham gia
leisure	(n)	/'leɪʒə(r)/	sự thư giãn nghỉ ngơi
leisure activity	(n)	/'leɪʒə æk'tɪvəti/	hoạt động lúc rảnh rỗi

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

GERUNDS: Danh động từ

I. FORMATION (Cách thành lập)

Danh động từ (**gerund**) được thành lập bằng cách thêm **ING** sau động từ thường.

Ex: to go - going; to think – thinking; to read - reading; to swim - swimming, etc...

II. USES (cách dùng)

1. Subject (Danh động từ làm chủ ngữ)

Ex: Going to the cinema is fun.

Reading books is my hobby.

2. Stand after a preposition (Đứng sau giới từ)

Ex: I am thinking about going camping in the mountain.

She is afraid of going there.

Một số động từ và tính từ có giới từ theo sau bởi danh động từ.

To look forward to (trông mong); surprised at (ngạc nhiên); busy (bận rộn); to insist on (khăng khăng, nài nỉ); to be interested in (thích thú).

3. Object (Danh động từ làm tân ngữ sau một số động từ)

Ex: He likes swimming.

I have finished doing my homework.

Một số động từ được theo sau bởi danh động từ:

to finish, to prevent (ngăn cản), to avoid (tránh), to delay (hoãn lại), to enjoy (thích), to deny (chối bỏ), to dislike, to consider (cân nhắc), to imagine (tưởng tượng), to risk (liều lĩnh), to support (ủng hộ), to suggest (đề nghị), to quit (từ bỏ)...

• Chúng ta cũng có thể đặt “not” trước “gerund” để chỉ nghĩa phủ định.

• Một số động từ dùng với cả “to infinitive” và “gerund” (ing -form). Nghĩa của chúng sẽ khác nhau.

Verbs	Examples
remember forget regret	- I don't remember posting the letter. (Tôi không nhớ là đã gửi thư rồi.) - I must remember to post the letter. (Tôi phải nhớ gửi lá thư.) (<=> chưa gửi.)
like hate prefer	- I don't like getting up so early. (Tôi không thích dậy sớm.) - I don't like to wake him up so early. (Tôi không muốn đánh thức anh ấy dậy sớm.)
stop	- She stopped singing. (Cô ấy ngừng hát.) She stopped to sing. (Cô ấy ngừng lại để hát.)

PART 2: EXERCISE

A. PHONETICS

I. Find the word which has different sound in the part underlined.

- A. laughed B. washed C. danced D. played
- A. beds B. dogs C. porters D. books

- | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| 3. A. <u>pic</u> tures | B. <u>wa</u> tches | C. <u>b</u> uses | D. <u>br</u> ushes |
| 4. A. <u>h</u> omework | B. <u>m</u> other | C. <u>o</u> pen | D. <u>j</u> udo |
| 5. A. <u>l</u> eisure | B. <u>e</u> ight | C. <u>c</u> elebrate | D. <u>p</u> enalty |
| 6. A. <u>f</u> un | B. <u>s</u> un | C. <u>s</u> urf | D. <u>c</u> ut |
| 7. A. <u>b</u> racelet | B. <u>c</u> ake | C. <u>m</u> ake | D. <u>h</u> at |
| 8. A. <u>a</u> lthough | B. <u>l</u> augh | C. <u>p</u> aragraph | D. <u>e</u> nough |
| 9. A. <u>c</u> omedy | B. <u>l</u> etter | C. <u>p</u> rincess | D. <u>c</u> inema |
| 10. A. <u>h</u> igh | B. <u>s</u> ight | C. <u>t</u> his | D. <u>f</u> ind |

II. Choose the words that have the different stress from the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. satisfied | B. socialize | C. volunteer | D. exercise |
| 2. A. information | B. technology | C. community | D. activity |
| 3. A. library | B. museum | C. melody | D. favourite |
| 4. A. protection | B. addicted | C. computer | D. goldfish |
| 5. A. skateboard | B. sticker | C. adore | D. leisure |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose the best answer.

- My dad doesn't mind _____ my mom from work every day.
A. pick up B. picked up C. picking up D. picks up
- Using computers too much may have harmful effects _____ your minds and bodies.
A. on B. to C. with D. onto
- I love the people in my village. They are so _____ and hospitable.
A. friendly B. vast C. slow D. inconvenient
- Among the _____, the Tay people have the largest population.
A. groups B. majorities C. ethnic minorities D. ethnic cultures.
- People in the countryside live _____ than those in the city.
A. happy B. more happily C. happily D. less happy
- Viet Nam is _____ multicultural country with 54 ethnic groups.
A. a B. an C. the D. A and C

II. Give the correct form of the following verbs.

- Mai enjoy _____ crafts, especially bracelets. (**make**)
- _____ you ever _____ a buffalo? (**ride**)
- The children used to _____ a long way to school. (**go**)
- They hate _____ their son texting his friends all day. (**see**)
- Do you fancy _____ in the park this Sunday? (**skateboard**)

III. Complete the sentences with the verb + -ing.

<i>do</i>	<i>go</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>ski</i>	<i>swim</i>	<i>watch</i>
-----------	-----------	-------------	------------	-------------	--------------

1. Susan hates _____ boxing but she loves football.
2. I don't like _____ in the pool at the sports centre.
3. Does she like _____ shopping in the supermarket?
4. Peter loves _____ judo.
5. They enjoy _____ the Olympics on TV.
6. My brother and I really like _____ in the Alps in February.

C. READING

I. Read the passage, and then decide whether the statements that follow are True (T) or False (F).

In my opinion, using the computer as your hobby can be harmful to both your health and your social life. Firstly, sitting all day in front of the computer can cause health problems such as eye-tiredness and obesity. Secondly you may get irritated easily. Besides, if you use the computer too much, you will not have time for your family and friends. In short, computers should only be used for a limited time.

- | | |
|--|----------|
| 1. Using the computer too much can make your eyes tired. | 1. _____ |
| 2. Using the computer too much is not good for you. | 2. _____ |
| 3. We still can spend a lot of time with our family and friends. | 3. _____ |
| 4. According to the writer, we can use the computer for a long time. | 4. _____ |
| 5. Computers should only be used for a limited time. | 5. _____ |

II. Read the passage carefully.

MY VILLAGE

I live in a village by Mekong River. Every day, like most of my friends, I walk to school. It is three kilometers away. After class, I often help my mother to collect water from the river and feed the chickens. At the weekend, the villagers often gather at the community hall where there is a TV. The adults watch TV, but more often they talk about their farm work and exchange news. The children run around playing games and shouting merrily. Laughter is heard everywhere.

My father sometimes takes me to the market town nearby where he sells our home products like vegetables, fruits, eggs... He then buys me an ice cream and lets me take a ride on the electric train in the town square. I love those trips.

On starry nights, we children lie on the grass, looking at the sky and daring each other to find the Milky Way. We dream of faraway places.

Answer the following questions.

1. Does the boy like riding on the electric train in the town square?
.....
2. What do the children do on starry nights?
.....
3. Do you like to live in the countryside or in the city? Why?
.....

III. Supply suitable words to complete the following passage.

Our classes take place for three hours every morning _____(1) Monday to Friday. The maximum class size _____(2) twenty and the average is ten. We use modern methods of _____(3) and learning, and the school has a language laboratory, a video camera and recorder. You will only be successful _____(4) improving your English, however, if you work hard and _____(5) speaking English as much as you can. You will take a short _____(6) in English as soon as you arrive. In this way, we can put you in a _____(7) at the most suitable level.

There are two classes _____(8) the elementary level; one is for complete beginners and the _____(9) is for students who know a _____(10) English. In both classes, you will practise simple conversations.

D. WRITING**I. Use the words and phrases to write a passage.**

1. In/ 1970s, skateboarding suddenly/ become very popular.
2. At first, skateboarders/ move slowly/ flat, smooth areas.
3. Then they/ begin/ ride quickly. This/ be called “freestyle” skateboarding.
4. Soon they/ be skateboarding skillfully up ramps/ doing tricks in the air.
5. This/ be called “ramp” skateboarding. Then they/ start skateboarding/ doing tricks/ the street.
6. This/ be “street-style” skateboarding - a combination of freestyle/ ramp.
7. For this, the skateboarders/ need protective clothing/ as knee and elbow pads/ helmets. This/ allow them/ skateboard safely.
8. Today skateboarding is still/ very popular sport, and there/ are lots of competitions.

II. Rewrite the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one

1. My house is smaller than your house.
→ Your house
2. I love listening to music.
→ I like.....
3. The black dress is more expensive than the white one.
→ The white dress
4. No one in my group is more intelligent than Mary.
→ Mary

III. Rearrange the sentences to make a suitable by writing the correct number (1-10) in each blank.

- _____A. One study stated that “sending text messages and using Facebook while doing homework were bad for overall GPA”.
- _____B. According to Facebook, in 2012, there are over 618 million active users per day, and over a billion active users per month.
- _____C. But does too much time on social networking sites harm students’ schoolwork?
- _____D. One small girl said that checking text messages and Facebook on her smartphone was the biggest obstacle to her homework.
- _____E. Several studies have showed opposite results.
- _____F. Some students are turning on software such as “Block Facebook” to block certain websites on their computers, and allow them to have only certain amounts of time on Facebook so that they can focus on homework.
- _____G. In this study, there was no relation between an excess of social media and a below average grades.
- _____H. One 2010 study showed that only 37% of “heavy” media users had grades lower than the average, while 35% of “light” social users had lower in average grades.
- _____I. Other studies have found a negative relationship between social medial usage and overall Grade Point Average (GPA).
- _____J. Social networking can help connect people with friends, give people the chance to share pictures online, and help people communicate easily.

IV. Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions: “in, at, on, after, under, between, beside, out of, above, beneath”.

1. There is a bus station the end of this road.
2. Keep those medicines the children’s reach.
3. I lost my keys somewhere the car and the house.
4. Come and sit your sister.
5. D comes C in the alphabet.
6. The boat sank the waves.
7. Don’t shelter the trees when it’s raining.
8. Please put these books the bookshelf the desk.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Find the word which has different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. stop <u>pe</u> d | B. ag <u>re</u> ed | C. list <u>ene</u> d | D. clea <u>n</u> ed |
| 2. A. mea <u>t</u> | B. sea <u>t</u> | C. grea <u>t</u> | D. mea <u>n</u> |
| 3. A. ca <u>ll</u> | B. la <u>nd</u> | C. fa <u>ll</u> | D. ba <u>ll</u> |
| 4. A. ra <u>th</u> er | B. <u>th</u> em | C. ne <u>ith</u> er | D. <u>th</u> ink |

II. Match a word in column A with its antonym in column B.

A	B	Answer
1. slim	a. shy	1. _____
2. careful	b. boring	2. _____
3. quiet	c. short	3. _____
4. interesting	d. hard-working	4. _____
5. generous	e. careless	5. _____
6. curly	f. fat	6. _____
7. beautiful	g. noisy	7. _____
8. lazy	h. selfish	8. _____
9. tall	i. straight	9. _____
10. confident	j. ugly	10. _____

III. Supply the correct form of the words in brackets.

- People in my country are very warm and _____. (**FRIEND**)
- An _____ is a child whose parents are dead. (**ORPHANAGE**)
- L.A Hill is a _____ writer. (**HUMOR**)
- I'm _____ sorry for the delay. (**EXTREME**)
- She looks more _____ than her sister. (**BEAUTY**)
- I am _____ enough to have a lot of friends. (**LUCK**)
- They enjoy the _____ summer evenings in the countryside. (**PEACE**)
- Those cats look _____. (**LOVE**)
- It was _____ of him to offer to pay for us both. (**GENEROUSITY**)
- Role-play is _____ in developing communication skills. (**HELP**)

IV. Choose the correct answer; A, B, C or D.

- We _____ to the countryside two months ago.
A. go B. have gone C. went D. will go
- What will you do if you _____ the final examinations?
A. will pass B. would pass C. pass D. passed
- I wish my summer holiday _____ longer.
A. will be B. is C. were D. has been
- I asked him _____ he came from.
A. where B. who C. what D. which
- It rained hard. _____, my father went to work.
A. Therefore B. However C. Because D. So
- Your sister writes poems and stories, _____ she?
A. does B. doesn't C. will D. won't

7. Laura fell asleep during the lesson _____ she was tired.
A. so B. but C. because D. therefore
8. How much _____ do you want?
A. bananas B. eggs C. candies D. sugar
9. Do you know the man _____ you met at the party yesterday?
A. what B. which C. whom D. whose
10. Tomorrow the director will have a meeting _____ 8:00 am to 10:00 am.
A. between B. from C. among D. in
11. The doctor advised me _____ jogging every morning.
A. went B. go C. to go D. going
12. The bike _____ I have just bought is every cheap.
A. which B. where C. what D. who
13. We will start our trip _____ 6 o'clock _____ the morning.
A. in / in B. at / in C. in / at D. at / at
14. He said he _____ come back later.
A. will be B. will C. would be D. would
15. We _____ anything from James since we left school.
A. haven't heard B. heard C. don't hear D. didn't hear
16. If I _____ a bird, I would be a dove.
A. would be B. were C. am D. will be
17. The children sang _____ during the trip.
A. happily B. happiness C. unhappy D. happy
18. This newspaper _____ everyday.
A. is publishing B. publish C. published D. is published
19. You have lived in this city since 1998, _____?
A. haven't you B. didn't you C. did you D. have you
20. My students enjoy _____ English very much.
A. learn B. learnt C. learning D. to learn

V. Complete the text with the comparative or superlative of the adjectives in brackets.

Who are the best (0- good) drivers?



Which drivers are the _____ (1- safe) on the roads? According to a recent survey, young and inexperienced drivers are the _____ (2- likely) to have an accident. _____ (3- old) drivers are _____ (4- careful). Gender makes a difference, too. Young men have the _____ (5- bad) accident records of all. They

are generally _____ (6- **aggressive**) _____ (7- **old**) drivers. They also choose _____ (8- **fast**) cars with _____ (9- **big**) engines.

One of the _____ (10- **interesting**) facts in the survey is that passengers have an effect on the driver. When young male drivers have their friends in the car, their driving becomes _____ (11- **bad**). When their wife or girlfriend is in the car, however, their driving is _____ (12- **good**). But the opposite is true for women. Their driving is _____ (13- **dangerous**) when their husband or boyfriend is in the car!

VI. Complete the following sentences with an appropriate form of the word in brackets.

1. There are four in my house. **bookshelf**
2. The photocopy is between the and the drugstore. **bake**
3. Is your brother an? **act**
4. Mai's sister is a **sing**
5. We must be when we cross the road. **care**
6. This tree has a lot of green **leaf**
7. Is your father a? **business**
8. I'm Vietnamese. What's your? **nation**
9. Air is a big problem in many cities in the world. **pollute**
10. Yoko is from Japan. She is **Japan**

VII. Put the words in the correct order to make meaningful sentences.

1. look / does / she / what / like?
=> _____
2. is / she / as / Mai / easy-going / not / as.
=> _____
3. classroom / to / they / the / outside / the / prefer.
=> _____
4. time / I / most / my / with / spend / of / Hoa
=> _____
5. in / sun / the / rises / East / the
=> _____
6. a / received / Lan / letter / yesterday / her / from / friend.
=> _____
7. not / get / is / she / to / old / married / enough.
=> _____
8. long / is / a / girl / she / with / nice / hair.
=> _____

VIII. Read the text and fill in the blank with the suitable word.

The normal working day in Britain is (1)_____ 9 a.m to 5 p.m, so most offices are open 9-5. Schools usually start at 9 o'clock, too, but they (2)_____ at about 3.30. Shops usually (3)_____ from 9 to 5.30 Monday to Saturday and (4)_____ shops open

from 10 to 4 on Sunday, too. Restaurants (5)_____ pubs usually open from 11 a.m to 11 p.m. Some (6)_____ come for a few hours in (7)_____ afternoon. People usually (8)_____ a meal between 1 and 2 in the afternoon and between 7 and 9 in the evening. Clubs don't usually open (9)_____ about 10 or 11 p.m and they close at 2 or 3 a.m. Museums normally open at about 10 a.m and (10)_____ dose at 5 or 6 p.m.

IX. Read the following passage and choose the correct answer for each gap.

I surf the Internet every day, but I've never (1)_____ more than an hour at a time online. I've got a laptop and also a smartphone, so I can (2)_____ the Internet anywhere. Today, for instance, I've been (3)_____ three times.

Mainly I just (4)_____ my friends. I read online magazines and I look (5)_____ information, too. I also compare prices of things, (6)_____ I've never bought anything online because I don't think it's safe.

I'm not an Internet addict, but some of my friends (7)_____. One friend of mine always looks (8)_____ because he spends all night online. Although he's got a lot of bad marks for the exams, he hasn't (9)_____ his habits.

In my experience, it's very useful for people who use the Internet (10)_____.

- | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. spend | B. spending | C. spent |
| 2. A. have | B. use | C. play |
| 3. A. online | B. Internet | C. computer |
| 4. A. write | B. email | C. send |
| 5. A. at | B. in | C. for |
| 6. A. because | B. but | C. although |
| 7. A. is | B. were | C. are |
| 8. A. tired | B. hard | C. happily |
| 9. A. change | B. to change | C. changed |
| 10. A. sensible | B. sensibly | C. sensibleness |

X. Read the following passage and answer the questions.

THE OLYMPIC GAMES

Every four years people all over the world watch the Olympic Games. It is a time for all kinds of people to unite in peace. Some of them join together to compete for gold medals. Millions of other people watch them on television.

Why do we have the Olympics? How did they begin? The first Olympic Games were in Greece in 776 B.C. There was only one event. People ran a race the length of the stadium. The Games lasted one day.

Slowly people added more events. The Games were only for men, and women could not even watch them. Only Greeks competed. They came from all parts of the Greek world. The time of the Games was a time of peace, and the government let everyone travel safely. Kings competed against common people. The winners became national heroes.

The first modern Games were in 1896 in Athens. The Greeks built a new stadium for the competition. Athletes from several countries competed. Then there were Olympics every four years in different cities in Europe and the United States until 1952. After that they were held in Melbourne, Tokyo, Mexico City, and Montreal besides in European cities. Each year there were

athletes from more nations. The first Winter Olympics were in 1924. The athletes compete in skiing and other winter sports.

Today there must be Olympic Games every four years. The Games must have at least fifteen events, and they cannot last more than sixteen days. There is no age limit people of any age can compete.

The competitors must not be professionals. They must be amateurs. The athletes compete for gold medals. The winners are still national heroes, as they were in the early Olympic Games in Greece.

In 1956, Egypt, Iraq, and Lebanon boycotted the Games. They did not compete in the Games because several countries took the Suez Canal from Egypt that year. Other countries boycotted the Games in 1964 and 1976. In 1980, the United States and other countries boycotted the Games in Moscow. In 1984, the Soviet Union and other countries boycotted the Games in Los Angeles. How can the nations of the world solve this problem? Maybe the Games should be in Greece every year, where they began. Then athletes from all over the world could compete without any boycotts.

Questions

1. What was the only event in the first Olympic Games?

.....

2. How many nations played in the first Games?

.....

3. What is the age limit?

.....

4. Are the competitors professionals or amateurs?

.....

5. Where and when is the next Olympic Games?

.....

Unit 2

LIFE IN THE COUNTRYSIDE

PART 1: vocabulary and GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

Word	Type	Pronunciation	Meaning
beehive	(n)	/'bi:harv/	tổ ong
brave	(adj)	/breɪv/	can đảm
buffalo-drawn cart	(n)	/'bʌfələʊ-drɔ:n kɑ:t /	xe trâu kéo
cattle	(n)	/'kætl/	gia súc
collect	(v)	/kə'lekt/	thu gom, lấy, sưu tầm
convenient	(adj)	/kən'vi:nɪənt/	thuận tiện, tiện nghi
disturb	(v)	/dɪ'stɜ:b/	làm phiền
electrical appliance	(n)	/'ɪlektɹɪkl ə'plaɪəns/	đồ điện
generous	(adj)	/'dʒenərəs/	hào phóng, rộng rãi
ger	(n)	/ger/	lều của dân du lịch Mông Cổ
Gobi Highlands		/'gəʊbi 'haɪlənd/	Cao nguyên Gobi
grassland	(n)	/'grɑ:slænd/	đồng cỏ
harvest time	(n)	/'hɑ:vɪst taɪm/	mùa gặt
herd	(v, n)	/hɜ:b/	chăn dắt/ bày, đàn
local	(adj, n)	/'ləʊkl/	địa phương, dân địa phương
Mongolia	(n)	/mɒŋ'gəʊliə/	Mông Cổ
nomad	(n)	/'nəʊmæd/	dân du mục
nomadic	(adj)	/'nəʊmædɪk/	thuộc về du mục
paddy field	(n)	/'pædi fi:ld/	đồng lúa
pasture	(n)	/'pɑ:stʃə(r)/	đồng cỏ
pick	(v)	/pɪk/	hái (hoa, quả...)
vast	(adj)	/vɑ:st/	rộng lớn, bát ngát
expect	(v)	/ɪk'spekt/	mong đợi
harvest	(n, v)	/'hɑ:vɪst/	vụ thu hoạch, gặt hái, thu hoạch
chore	(n)	/tʃɔ:/	thăm hiểm, thăm dò

envious	(adj)	/ˈenviəs/	ghen tị, thèm muốn
explore	(v)	/ɪkˈsplɔː/	thăm hiểm, thăm dò

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS (So sánh hơn của tính từ và trạng từ)

Ta sử dụng So sánh hơn để so sánh giữa người (hoặc vật) này với người (hoặc vật) khác.

1. Comparative adjectives (So sánh hơn của tính từ)

Cấu trúc:

- Short Adj: S + **be** + **adj + er + than** + Noun/ Pronoun
- Long Adj: S + **be** + **more + adj + than** + Noun/ Pronoun

Ex: China **is bigger** than India. (Trung Hoa to lớn hơn Ấn Độ.)

Gold **is more valuable** than silver. (Vàng có giá trị hơn bạc.)

2. Comparative adverbs (So sánh hơn với trạng từ):

Cấu trúc:

- Short Adv: S + V + **adv + er + than** + Noun/ Pronoun
- Long Adv: S + V + **more / less + adv + than** + Noun/ Pronoun

Ex: - They work **harder than I do**. = They work **harder than** me. (Họ làm việc chăm chỉ hơn tôi.)

- My friend did **the test more carefully than** I did. = My friend did the test **more carefully than me**. (Bạn tôi làm bài kiểm tra cẩn thận hơn tôi.)

***Một số tính từ/ trạng từ bất qui tắc: good/well – better, bad/badly – worse, little – less, many/ much – more, far – farther/ further, late – later, old – older/ elder**

Ex: I believe you will be **better** next time.

PART 2: EXERCISE

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. neigh <u>or</u> | B. coug <u>h</u> | C. althoug <u>h</u> | D. droug <u>h</u> |
| 2. A. entertai <u>n</u> | B. rai <u>n</u> | C. ai <u>r</u> | D. strai <u>n</u> |
| 3. A. try | B. facili <u>t</u> y | C. typhoo <u>n</u> | D. suppl <u>y</u> |
| 4. A. superma <u>r</u> ket | B. ru <u>l</u> er | C. poll <u>u</u> tion | D. <u>u</u> rban |
| 5. A. natu <u>r</u> e | B. migran <u>t</u> | C. fa <u>c</u> ility | D. awa <u>y</u> |
| 6. A. traffi <u>c</u> | B. relat <u>i</u> ve | C. traged <u>y</u> | D. ja <u>m</u> |
| 7. A. apartme <u>n</u> t | B. offer | C. prefer | D. anothe <u>r</u> |
| 8. A. natu <u>r</u> e | B. pressu <u>r</u> e | C. <u>u</u> rban | D. suppl <u>y</u> |
| 9. A. creat <u>e</u> | B. peacefu <u>l</u> | C. increa <u>s</u> e | D. easi <u>l</u> y |
| 10. A. accessib <u>l</u> e | B. pressu <u>r</u> e | C. illne <u>s</u> s | D. success |

II. Choose the words that have the different stress from the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. A. nomadic | B. generous | C. colourful | D. countryside |
| 2. A. popular | B. calculus | C. beehive | D. disturb |
| 3. A. harvest | B. collect | C. peaceful | D. whisper |
| 4. A. charade | B. transport | C. expect | D. paddy |
| 5. A. opportunity | B. inconvenient | C. facility | D. optimistic |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR**I. Write the comparison of these adjectives and adverbs.****Tính từ/ Trạng từ****So sánh hơn**

- | | |
|-----------------|-------|
| 1. beautifully | ..... |
| 2. hot | ..... |
| 3. crazy | ..... |
| 4. slowly | ..... |
| 5. much | ..... |
| 6. little | ..... |
| 7. badly | ..... |
| 8. well | ..... |
| 9. attractively | ..... |
| 10. big | ..... |

II. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the word in brackets.

- Iceland is considered the most _____ country in the world. (**peace**)
- A _____ lifestyle has its advantages and disadvantages. (**nomad**)
- My brother has been a stamp _____ for several years. (**collect**)
- It is a/ an _____ place to hold a picnic because it is too far from the road. (**convenience**)
- Drinking water in some areas may be _____. (**safe**)
- During my stay in the village, I was _____ with several local farmers. (**friend**)
- Encouraging children to eat and drink _____ is very important. (**health**)
- Local people in the village often wear their _____ costumer during the festivals. (**tradition**)
- Please give _____ to that charity to help the homeless after the flood. (**generous**)
- The baby slept very _____ because the bed was really comfortable. (**sound**)

III. Complete the sentences. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

- It is in the city than it is in the country.
A. noisily B. more noisier C. noisier D. noisy
- The English test was than I thought it would be.
A. the easier B. more easy C. easiest D. easier

3. English is thought to be than Math.
A. harder B. the more hard C. hardest D. the hardest
4. My house is hers.
A. cheap than B. cheaper C. more cheap than D. cheaper than
5. Her office is away than mine.
A. father B. more far C. farther D. farer
6. Tom is than David.
A. handsome B. the more handsome
C. more handsome D. the most handsome
7. He did the test I did.
A. as bad as B. badder than C. more badly than D. worse than
8. A boat is than a plane.
A. slower B. slowest C. more slow D. more slower
9. My new sofa is than the old one.
A. more comfortable B. comfortably
C. more comfortabler D. comfortable
10. My sister dances than me.
A. gooder B. weller C. better D. more good
11. This road is than that road.
A. narrower B. narrow C. the most narrow D. more narrower
12. He drives his brother.
A. more careful than B. more carefully
C. more carefully than D. as careful as
13. It was day of the year.
A. the colder B. the coldest C. coldest D. colder
14. She is student in my class.
A. most hard-working B. more hard-working
C. the most hard-working D. as hard-working
15. Jupiter is planet in the solar system.
A. the biggest B. the bigger C. bigger D. biggest

IV. Complete the sentences. Write one word of comparison in each space.

1. This book is better the other one.
2. Jim is not tall as his sister.
3. I like running. It's interesting than swimming.
4. This film is funnier the last one we saw.
5. Do this exercise first. It's important than that one.
6. These books are cheaper the other ones.
7. Don't worry! It's not bad as you think.
8. This road is longer I thought.

V. Choose the best answers of these sentences.

1. Of the four dresses, I like the red one (**better/ best**).
2. Bill is the (**happier/ happiest**) person we know.
3. Pat's cat is (**faster/ fastest**) than Peter's.
4. This poster is (**colourfuler/ more colourful**) than the one in the hall.
5. Does Fred feel (**weller/ better**) today than he did yesterday?
6. This vegetable soup tastes very (**good/ best**).
7. Jane is the (**less/ least**) athletic of all the women.
8. My cat is the (**prettier/ prettiest**) of the two.
9. This summary is (**the better/ the best**) of the pair.
10. The colder the weather gets, (**sicker/ the sicker**) I feel.

C. READING

I. Read the information about France and Spain. Complete the sentences about the countries, using a comparative form of the words in bracket.

FRANCE		SPAIN	
Size:	550,000 sq km	Size:	500,000 sq km
Population:	64 million	Population:	40 million
Summer temperature:	18 degree C	Summer temperature:	24 degree C
Winter temperature:	5 degree C	Winter temperature:	11 degree C
Rainfall:	650mm	Rainfall:	300mm

1. France Spain. (**big**)
2. Spain France. (**smaller**)
3. Spain's population France's population. (**large**)
4. France's population not Spain's population. (**small**)
5. Spain France in summer. (**hot**)
6. Spain not France in winter. (**cold**)
7. Spain not France. (**rainy**)
8. France Spain. (**rainy**)

II. Read the following passage and choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

Sydney is Australia's most exciting city. The history of Australia begins here. In 1788 Captain Arthur Philips arrived in Sydney with 11 ships and 1624 passengers from Britain (including 770 prisoners). Today there are about 3.6 million people in Sydney. It is the biggest city in Australia, the busiest port in the South Pacific and one of the most beautiful cities in the world. In Sydney, the buildings are higher, the colors are brighter and the nightlife is more exciting. There are over 20 excellent beaches close to Sydney and its warm climate and cool winter have made it a favorite city for immigrants from overseas. There are two things that make Sydney famous: its beautiful harbor, the Sydney Harbor Bridge, which was built in 1932 and the Sydney Opera House, which was opened in 1973.

1. Where did Captain Arthur Philips arrive in 1788?
 - A. South Pacific
 - B. Sydney Harbor
 - C. Britain
 - D. Sydney
2. Which of the following should be the title of the reading passage?
 - A. Sydney's Opera House
 - B. The history of Sydney
 - C. Sydneys beaches and harbors
 - D. An introduction of Sydney
3. Which of the following statements is NOT true about Sydney?
 - A. Sydney is not a favorite city for immigrants from overseas.
 - B. Sydney is one of the most beautiful cities in the world.
 - C. Sydney is the most exciting city in Australia.
 - D. Sydney is the biggest port in the South Pacific.
4. How many beaches are there close to Sydney?
 - A. 11 beaches
 - B. over 20 beaches
 - C. nearly 20 beaches
 - D. 770 beaches
5. When was the Sydney Harbor Bridge built?
 - A. 1788
 - B. 1973
 - C. 1932
 - D. 1625

III. Read the text and fill in the blanks with the words in the box, using comparative or superlative of the adjectives.

<i>the best</i>	<i>warmer</i>	<i>drier</i>	<i>the most beautiful</i>	<i>the worst</i>	<i>richer</i>
<i>the biggest</i>	<i>the largest</i>	<i>the most important</i>		<i>the most famous</i>	

California is (1) _____ state in the USA. It isn't (2) _____ state; that's Alaska. But it's got (3) _____ population and it's certainly (4) _____ state for the US economy (it's (5) _____ than most countries in the world). The coast had one of (6) _____ climates in the USA; it's (7) _____ and (8) _____ than most places. Some people would also say it's (9) _____ state! But California has some problems; Los Angeles has one of (10) _____ crime rates of nay US city.

IV. Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.

Living in the country is something that people from the city often dream about. However, in reality, it has both advantages and disadvantages.

There are certainly many advantages of living in the country. First, you can enjoy peace and quietness. Moreover, people tend to be friendlier. A further advantage is that there is less traffic, so it is safer for young children.

However, there are certain disadvantages or drawbacks to life outside the city. First, because there are fewer people, you are likely to have few friends. In addition, entertainment is difficult to find, particularly in the evening. Furthermore, the fact that there are fewer shops and services so it is quite hard to find jobs. As a result, you may have to travel a long way to work, which can be extremely expensive.

In conclusion, it can be seen that the country is more suitable for some people than others. On the whole, it is often the best place for those who are retired or who have young children. In contrast, young or single people who have a career are better provided for in the city.

1. According to the passage, living in the country has _____.
 A. both good and bad points B. only bad points
 C. only good points D. no disadvantages
2. How many advantages does living in the country have?
 A. Two B. Four C. Three D. No
3. Living in the country is safer for young children because _____.
 A. there are few shops B. there is less traffic
 C. there are fewer people D. there are few services
4. Which of the following statements is NOT true according to the passage?
 A. The country is only suitable for retired people.
 B. It's hard to find entertainment in the country.
 C. There are fewer shops and services in the country.
 D. People in the country tend to be friendlier than people in the city.
5. Having few friends is _____.
 A. one of drawbacks to life in the country
 B. the only disadvantage of living in the country
 C. one of certain advantages to life outside the city
 D. one of certain drawbacks to life outside the city

D. WRITING

I. Complete the sentences with the correct comparison.

Name: Nam

Home: a farm/ the country/ Vinh Phuc/ Vietnam

Likes: summer – climb/ mountains; winter – go fishing

Reason: relaxing/ quiet

Dislikes: city life/ not safe enough/ walk around alone/ too dangerous/ cycle/ street/ heavy traffic

1. Nam lives _____
2. In summer, he _____
3. In winter, he _____
4. He really likes it because _____
5. He thinks city life is not _____
6. He also thinks it is too _____

II. Rewrite each sentence so it has the same meaning. Use a comparative form of the adjective in brackets.

1. Tim is older than Sarah. (young)
 Sarah
2. Our house is larger than yours. (small)
 Your house is
3. Bill is not as tall as David. (short)
 Bill is

4. Jack's marks are worse than mine. (good)

My marks

5. This book is the same price at that one. (expensive)

That book is

6. Your bike is slower than mine. (fast)

My bike

III. Rewrite the sentences of comparison.

1. Her old house is bigger than her new one.

→ Her new house

2. No one in my class is taller than Peter.

→ Peter.....

3. The black dress is more expensive than the white one.

→ The white dress

4. According to me, English is easier than Maths.

→ According to me, Maths

5. No one in my group is more intelligent than Mary.

→ Mary.....

6. No river in the world is longer than the Nile.

→ The Nile.....

7. Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

→ No mountain

8. This is the first time I have ever met such a pretty girl,

→ She is

9. He works much. He feels tired.

→ The more.....

10. This computer works better than that one.

→ That computer

11. The apartment is big. The rent is high.

→ The bigger.....

12. We set off soon. We will arrive soon.

→ The sooner

13. The joke is good. The laughter is loud.

→ The better.....

14. She gets fat. She feels tired.

→ The fatter

15. As he gets older, he wants to travel less.

→ The older.....

16. The children are excited with the difficult games.

→ The more.....

17. People dive fast. Many accidents happen.

→ The faster

18. I meet him much. I hate him much.

→ The more

19. My boss works better when he is pressed for time.

→ The less

20. As he has much money, he wants to spend much.

→ The more

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Choose the word (A, B, c or D) which is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. <u>fun</u> | B. <u>sun</u> | C. <u>surf</u> | D. <u>cut</u> |
| 2. A. <u>leisure</u> | B. <u>eight</u> | C. <u>celebrate</u> | D. <u>penalty</u> |
| 3. A. <u>populated</u> | B. <u>loaded</u> | C. <u>harvested</u> | D. <u>lived</u> |
| 4. A. <u>fields</u> | B. <u>flowers</u> | C. <u>lemons</u> | D. <u>parks</u> |

II. Write the comparative and superlative of these adjectives.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
interesting	<i>more interesting</i>	<i>the most interesting</i>
expensive	_____	_____
thick	_____	_____
friendly	_____	_____
fine	_____	_____
thin	_____	_____
difficult	_____	_____
warm	_____	_____
wise	_____	_____
easy	_____	_____
wonderful	_____	_____
sunny	_____	_____
fat	_____	_____
long	_____	_____

III. Fill in each blank with the suitable preposition.

- Please wait _____ me a few minutes.
- You can use dictionary to find _____ new words.
- They are very proud _____ their new house.

4. My sister is not very good _____ math.
5. Tim should work harder _____ his Spanish pronunciation.
6. Do you believe _____ ghosts?
7. I got good grades _____ English and History.

IV. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the word in brackets.

1. There is a _____ of books on the shelf. **(collect)**
2. It is very _____ for people in remote areas to get to hospitals. **(convenience)**
3. He is very _____ with his hands. **(skill)**
4. It is said that water collected from the local streams is _____ to drink. **(safe)**
5. We want _____ relations with all countries. **(friend)**
6. I like to eat _____, so I eat a lot of fruits and vegetables every day. **(health)**

V. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentence.

- Teenagers enjoy to music and out with friends.
A. listen – hang
B. to listen – to hang
C. listening – hang
D. listening – hanging
- Don't worry. It is to travel to that village even at night.
A. safe
B. unsafe
C. difficult
D. inconvenient
- Life in a small town is than that in a big city.
A. peaceful
B. much peaceful
C. less peaceful
D. much more peaceful
- The boys often help their parents to water from the village well.
A. gather
B. collect
C. absorb
D. give
- month is the Hoa Ban festival of the Thai people held in?
A. When
B. Which
C. How many
D. How often
- Vietnamese people have many customs and crafts.
A. tradition
B. traditional
C. culture
D. cultural

VI. Complete the sentences with the correct verb form.

1. John adores _____ (**play**) badminton in the winter
2. My father sometimes goes _____ (**hunt**) in the forests. He'd like to find some more food for our family.
3. The boy _____ (**pick**) up a stone and threw it in to the river.
4. He _____ (**collect**) stamps from many countries since he _____ (**be**) eight.
5. Which sports do you like _____ (**play**)?
6. Hoa's teacher wants her (**spend**) _____ more time on math.
7. I promise I (**try**) _____ my best next semester.
8. Sandra needs (**improve**) _____ her English writing.
9. You should (**underline**) _____ the word you want (**learn**) _____.

10. Can you help me **(move)** _____ this table?
11. Nam always **(get)** _____ grade A in Physics, but last semester he (get) _____ B.
12. They were proud of (be) _____ so successful.

VII. Use the adjective in brackets in their correct forms of comparison to complete the sentences.

- Tea is _____ coffee. **(cheap)**
- The new harvest machine is _____ than the old one. **(effective)**
- The countryside is _____ the town. **(beautiful)**
- A tractor is _____ a buffalo. **(powerful)**
- My sister is _____ me. **(tall)**
- Blue whales are _____ elephants. **(heavy)**
- The Mekong River is _____ the Red River. **(long)**
- Do you think English is _____ French in grammar? **(easy)**
- My new bed is _____ my old bed. **(comfortable)**
- The film about my village town is _____ than the book. **(interesting)**

VIII. Read the text and choose the suitable words with the correct blank spaces.

<i>visitors</i>	<i>stories</i>	<i>mountain</i>	<i>any</i>	<i>riding</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>with</i>	<i>life</i>
-----------------	----------------	-----------------	------------	---------------	-----------	-------------	-------------

I live in a (1) village. My parents often tell me (2) about their life in the past. It's not much like the village I can see nowadays.

Some villagers now live in brick houses instead of earthen ones. Our houses are better equipped (3) electric fans and TVs. Thanks to the TV, we now know more about (4) outside our village. We don't use oil lamps (5) more. We have electric lights which are much brighter. More villagers are using motorcycles for transport instead of (6) a horse or walking. We – village children – no longer have to walk a long way and cross a stream to get (7) school, which is dangerous in the rainy season. Now there's a new school nearby. We also have more (8) from the city. They come to experience our way of life.

IX. Read the text and decide whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F).

Tokyo is a famous city. There are a few good buildings and impressive temples; there are a few parks worth visiting. Everything has to be small in Tokyo: houses, rooms, shops. Long-side streets consist of tiny houses only, and this often creates a toy-like, with small women tip-toeing along in their kimonos.

Tokyo at night is a very different place from Tokyo in daytime. Millions of neon lights are switched on and nowhere in the world is more attractive.

A town is not its buildings alone; it is an atmosphere, its pleasure, its sadness, its madness, and above all its people. Tokyo may lack architectural beauty but it has character and excitement; it is alive. I found it a mysterious and lovable city.

- _____ There are many beautiful buildings in Tokyo.

2. _____ There is nothing to see in the parks in Tokyo.
3. _____ Many small houses found along long road.
4. _____ At night, Tokyo is not as attractive as many other cities.
5. _____ Tokyo has beautiful architecture.
6. _____ The author likes Tokyo.

X. Make up sentences using the words and phrases given.

1. It/ to/ quite simple/ is/ cook Thang Co.
.....
2. to/ do/ you/ like/ in/ live/ the big city /or the countryside?
.....
3. becoming/ is/ the/ better/ traffic.
.....
4. life/ in/ is/ better/ the/ changing/ country.
.....
5. Ho Chi Minh city/ Mr. Hung/ tonight/ arriving/ in/ is.
.....
6. I/ countryside/ the/ last Sunday/ went/ my uncle/ to/ and.
.....
7. is/ home/ so/ dark/ should/ It/ we/ go/ getting
.....
8. grandfather/ Saturday/ I/ my/ am/ on/ visiting.
.....

XI. Rewrite the sentences, using the given words.

1. Yesterday the temperature was nine degrees. Today it's only six degrees.
=> It's.....
2. The journey takes four hours by car and five hours by train.
=> It takes
3. We were very busy at work today. We are not as busy as that every day.
=> We
4. Jane cooks better than her sister.
=> Jane's sister
5. Tom is the best football player in this team.
=> Nobody in this team

Unit 3

PEOPLES OF VIETNAM

PART 1: vocabulary and GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

Word	Type	Pronunciation	Meaning
ancestor	(n)	/'ænsɛstər/	ông cha, tổ tiên
basic	(adj)	/'beɪsɪk/	cơ bản
complicated	(adj)	/'kɒmplɪkətɪd/	tinh vi, phức tạp
costume	(n)	/'kɒstjʊ:m/	trang phục
curious	(adj)	/'kjʊəriəs/	tò mò, ham tìm hiểu
custom	(n)	/'kʌstəm	tập quán, phong tục
diverse	(adj)	/daɪ'vɜ:s/	đa dạng
diversity	(n)	/daɪ'vɜ:səti/	sự đa dạng, phong phú
ethnic	(adj)	/'eθnɪk/	(thuộc) dân tộc
ethnic minority people	(n)	/'eθnɪk maɪ'nɒrəti 'pi:pl /	người dân tộc thiểu số
gather	(v)	/'gæðə(r)/	thu thập, hái lượm, tập hợp
heritage	(n)	/'herɪtɪdʒ/	di sản
hunt	(v)	/hʌnt/	săn bắt
insignificant	(adj)	/,ɪnsɪg'nɪfɪkənt/	không quan trọng
majority	(n)	/mə'dʒɒrəti	đa số
minority	(n)	/maɪ'nɒrəti/	thiểu số
multicultural	(adj)	/,mʌlti'kʌltʃərəl/	đa văn hóa
recognise	(v)	/'rekəɡnaɪz/	công nhận, xác nhận
shawl	(n)	/ʃɔ:l/	khăn choàng (khăn piêu)
speciality	(n)	/,speʃi'æləti/	đặc sản
stilt house	(n)	/stɪlt haʊs/	nhà sàn
terraced field	(n)	/'terəst fi:ld/	ruộng bậc thang

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. MẠO TỪ KHÔNG XÁC ĐỊNH : A/ AN

A. Lý thuyết

1. **A** đứng trước một phụ âm hoặc một nguyên âm (**a, e, i, o, u**) có âm là phụ âm.
 - **a** game (một trò chơi); **a** boat (một chiếc tàu thủy)
 - **a** university (một trường đại học); **a** year (một năm)
 - **a** European (một người Âu); **a** one-legged man (một người thọt chân)
2. **An** đứng trước một nguyên âm hoặc một **h** câm.
 - **an** egg (một quả trứng); **an** ant (một con kiến)
 - **an** honour (một niềm vinh dự); **an** hour (một giờ đồng hồ)
3. **An** cũng đứng trước các mẫu tự đặc biệt đọc như một nguyên âm.
 - **an** SOS (một tín hiệu cấp cứu); **an** MSc (một thạc sĩ khoa học), **an** X-ray (một tia X)
4. **A/An** có hình thức giống nhau ở tất cả các giống.
 - **a** tiger (một con cọp); **a** tigress (một con cọp cái)
 - **an** uncle (một ông chú); **an** aunt (một bà dì)

B. Ví dụ:

1. Trước một danh từ số ít đếm được.
 - We need **a** computer. (Chúng tôi cần một máy vi tính)
 - He eats **an** ice-cream. (Anh ta ăn một cây kem)
2. Trước một danh từ làm bổ túc từ (kể cả danh từ chỉ nghề nghiệp)
 - It was **a** tempest. (Đó là một trận bão dữ dội)
 - She'll be **a** musician. (Cô ta sẽ là một nhạc sĩ)
 - Peter is **an** actor. (Peter là một diễn viên)
3. Trong các thành ngữ chỉ số lượng nhất định
 - **a** lot (nhiều); **a** couple (một cặp/đôi); **a** third (một phần ba)
 - **a** dozen (một tá); **a** hundred (một trăm); **a** quarter (một phần tư)
4. Trong các thành ngữ chỉ giá cả, tốc độ, tỉ lệ ...
 - 90 kilometres **an** hour (chín mươi kilomet/giờ)
 - 4 times **a** day (bốn lần mỗi ngày)
 - 2 dollars **a** litre (hai đô la một lít)
 - (**a/an** = **per** (mỗi))
5. Trong các thành ngữ chỉ sự cảm thán
 - What **a** pity! (thật đáng tiếc!)
 - Such **a** picturesque hill! (một ngọn đồi thật thơ mộng!)
 - What **a** beautiful painting! (một bức tranh tuyệt vời!)
6. **a** có thể đứng trước Mr/Mrs/Miss + họ
 - **a** Mr Smith, **a** Mrs Smith, **a** Miss Smith

II. MẠO TỪ XÁC ĐỊNH : **THE**

The dùng cho cả danh từ đếm được (số ít lẫn số nhiều) và danh từ không đếm được.

The truth (sự thật)

The time (thời gian)

The bicycle (một chiếc xe đạp)

The bicycles (những chiếc xe đạp)

• **Không dùng mạo từ xác định:**

1. Trước tên quốc gia, tên châu lục, tên núi, tên hồ, tên đường.

Europe (Châu Âu), South America (Nam Mỹ), France (nước Pháp)

2. Khi danh từ không đếm được hoặc danh từ số nhiều dùng theo nghĩa chung nhất, chứ không chỉ riêng trường hợp nào.

- I don't like French beer. (Tôi chẳng thích bia của Pháp.)

- I don't like Mondays. (Tôi chẳng thích những ngày thứ Hai.)

3. Trước danh từ trừu tượng, trừ phi danh từ đó chỉ một trường hợp cá biệt.

- Men fear death. (Con người sợ cái chết.)

(But) - **The** death of **the** President made his country acephalous.

(Cái chết của vị tổng thống đã khiến cho đất nước ông không có người lãnh đạo).

4. Sau sở hữu tính từ hoặc sau danh từ ở sở hữu cách

- **My** friend, **chứ không nói** *My the friend*

- **The** girl's mother = **the** mother of **the** girl (Mẹ của cô gái)

5. Trước tên gọi các bữa ăn

- They invited some friends to dinner. (Họ đã mời vài người bạn đến ăn tối)

6. Trước các tước hiệu

- President Roosevelt (Tổng thống Roosevelt)

- King Louis XIV of France (Vua Louis XIV của Pháp)

7. Trong các trường hợp sau đây

- Women are always fond of music. (Phụ nữ luôn thích âm nhạc.)

- Come by car/ by bus (Đến bằng xe ô tô/ xe buýt)

- In spring/ in autumn (Vào mùa xuân/ mùa thu), last night (đêm qua), next year (năm tới), from beginning to end (từ đầu tới cuối), from left to right (từ trái sang phải)

- Play golf/ chess/ cards/ football/..... (chơi gôn/ đánh cờ/ đánh bài)

PART 2: EXERCISE

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose main stress is placed differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. A. notice | B. surface | C. contact | D. effect |
| 2. A. humid | B. airmail | C. discuss | D. pancake |
| 3. A. area | B. comfort | C. market | D. concern |
| 4. A. customer | B. delicious | C. grocery | D. resident |
| 5. A. organize | B. discussion | C. restaurant | D. neighbor |

II. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>t</u> asty | B. m <u>a</u> ll | C. st <u>a</u> dium | D. ch <u>a</u> nge |
| 2. A. gro <u>c</u> ery | B. m <u>o</u> nth | C. c <u>o</u> mfort | D. m <u>o</u> ney |
| 3. A. <u>j</u> ust | B. s <u>u</u> mm <u>er</u> | C. m <u>u</u> ch | D. r <u>u</u> ler |
| 4. A. a <u>r</u> ound | B. del <u>i</u> cious | C. h <u>o</u> use | D. g <u>r</u> ound |
| 5. A. ex <u>h</u> ibition | B. ne <u>i</u> ghbor <u>h</u> ood | C. <u>h</u> ot | D. <u>h</u> umid |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose the correct answers.

1. Is this **a person** / **the person** you told me about?
2. This is **the only cinema/an only cinema** in the area.
3. Philip has just bought **the Thames barge** / **a Thames barge**.
4. I'm going to **the British Museum /British Museum** this afternoon.
5. Are you going to **church** / **the church** on Sunday?
6. Do you have **a milk jug** / **milk jug**?
7. **The Prime Minister** / **Prime Minister** will give a speech this afternoon.
8. **The computer** / **Computer** has already changed our lives dramatically.
9. I haven't been to **an open-air theatre** / **open-air theatre** before.
10. Here is **a thousand pounds** / **the a thousand pounds** I owe you.
11. I was **under an impression** / **under the impression** that you had left.
12. I have to go I'm in **a hurry/ hurry**.
13. I managed to sell the old painting **at a profit** / **at profit**.
14. I think I prefer the other restaurant **on the whole** / **on whole**.
15. How many hours do you work, **on average** / **on the average**, every week?
16. I was **in pain** / **in a pain** after I twist my ankle.
17. Jack recovered from his accident and is now **out of danger** / **out of the danger**.
18. Excuse me, but you're in the way / in a way.
19. Sue felt seasick on **the cross- channel ferry** / **a cross- channel ferry**.
20. The burglar hit me on **my back of the neck** / **the back of my neck**.

II. Complete each sentence with a, an or the.

1. What's matter? Are you all right?
2. Kate has bought new car.
3. Some people think that moon is made of cheese!
4. I'm collecting money for poor.
5. Brian hasn't found job yet.
6. Can you play guitar?
7. Don't forget to turn off television.
8. There's knife in second drawer.
9. art museum is in city center.

III. Choose the best answers A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. We are looking for _____ place to spend _____ night.
A. the-the B. a-the C. a-a D. the-a
2. Please turn off _____ lights when you leave _____ room.
A. the-the B. a-a C. the-a D. a-the
3. We are looking for people with _____ experience.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø

4. Would you pass me _____ salt, please?
A. a B. the C. an D. Ø
5. Can you show me _____ way to _____ station?
A. the – the B. a – a C. the – a D. a – the
6. She has read _____ interesting book.
A. a B. an C. the D. Ø
7. You'll get _____ shock if you touch _____ live wire with that screwdriver.
A. an – the B. Ø – the C. a – a D. an – the
8. Mr. Smith is _____ old customer and _____ honest man.
A. an – the B. the – an C. an – an D. the – the
9. _____ youngest boy has just started going to _____ school.
A. A – Ø B. Ø – the C. an – Ø D. The – Ø
10. Do you go to _____ prison to visit him?
A. the B. a C. Ø D. an
11. _____ eldest boy is at _____ college.
A. a – the B. The – Ø C. Ø – a D. an – x
12. Are you going away next week? - No, _____ week after next.
A. an B. a C. the D. Ø
13. Would you like to hear _____ story about _____ English scientist?
A. an – the B. the – the C. a – the D. a – an
14. There'll always be a conflict between _____ old and _____ young.
A. the – the B. an – a C. an – the D. the – a
15. There was _____ collision at _____ corner.
A. the – a B. an – the C. a – the D. the – the
16. My mother thinks that this is _____ expensive shop.
A. the B. an C. a D. Ø
17. Like many women, she loves _____ parties and _____ gifts.
A. the – a B. a – the C. a – a D. Ø – Ø
18. She works seven days _____ week.
A. a B. the C. an D. Ø

C. READING

I. Read the following passage and choose the item (A, B, C or D) that best answers each of the questions about it.

HOW TO USE BICYCLE

1. Don't ride a bicycle which is not the right size for you.
2. Check a bicycle before using it and make sure that the brakes and steering-wheel work properly and the tyres have enough air in them.
3. When riding a bicycle, always use a cycling track at the side of the road when there is one.
4. Don't ride too fast, especially when going down hills and turning corner.
5. Control the speed of your bicycle with your brakes, but always use them gently.

6. When in a group, always ride in single file.
7. Always keep to the side of the road, do not ride in the middle of the road or weave back and forth on the road.
- You should ride a bicycle which is _____.

A. higher than you are	C. your right size
B. with high seat	D. your favorite
 - Which part of a bicycle is used for changing direction?

A. The front wheel	C. The tyres
B. The back wheel	D. The steering wheel
 - When is the most dangerous to ride fast?

A. When riding along the roads	C. When going down hills
B. When turning corner	D. B and C are right
 - Which part of a bicycle do you use to control the speed?

A. The brake	C. The chains
B. The lights	D. None of the above
 - When you are in a hurry you can _____.

A. ride in the middle of the road	B. weave back and forth
C. ride dangerously	D. ride in a cycling track quickly

II. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

COMMUNAL HOUSE (RONG HOUSE)

The Rong House can only be (1) _____ in villages to the north of the Central Highlands, especially in Gia Lai and Kon Tum provinces. It is a large, imposing, beautifully decorated stilt house built (2) _____ in the middle of the village. It is where community activities (3) _____, meetings, wedding ceremonies, or playing ceremonies. It is also the place for reception of guests. The Rong house of each ethnic group has its own architectural style, design, and decor. Yet there are shared (4) _____. In the village, it is often (5) _____ house roofed with yellow-dried thatch leaves and having 8 big wood columns. The rafters are decorated with patterns of bright colour, depicting religious scenes, legendary stories about ancient heroes, stylized animals, and other familiar things of the village life. The most distinction of the decor of the Rong House is the (6) _____ of the brilliant God of Sun. The Rong House is a (7) _____ of the culture of Central Highlanders, an age-old and stable culture. The bigger the house, the wealthier the village is. It is a (8) _____ of the whole village.

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. found | B. find | C. to find | D. finding |
| 2. A. on | B. in | C. at | D. under |
| 3. A. happens | B. take on | C. take place | D. occurs |
| 4. A. features | B. cultures | C. customs | D. designs |
| 5. A. a big | B. a bigger | C. biggest | D. the biggest |
| 6. A. portrait | B. photo | C. image | D. painting |
| 7. A. signal | B. sign | C. symbol | D. scene |
| 8. A. design | B. pride | C. proud | D. respect |

III. Read the following text, and fill in the blanks with the suitable words given.

built that houses which
located history opened year

Duong Lam Village is (1) _____ in Duong Lam Commune at a 45 km distance from Ha Noi. It is the birthplace of two kings in the (2) _____ of Vietnam, Phung Hung (or Bo Cai Dai Vuong) and Ngo Quyen, who (3) _____ up the long-term self-control and independence period of Viet Nam after Bach Dang Victory in the (4) _____ 938.

All houses, gates, village gates and wells are (5) _____ of laterite creating an architectural complex, a unique village (6) _____ is typical for villages in the midlands in the North of Vietnam.

At present, there are still nearly old 200 (7) _____ and many other historical monuments such as Phung Hung Temple, Ngo Quyen Royal Tomb, Mong Phu Communal House, Ho Gam Hill at (8) _____ Phung Hung killed tigers to rescue villagers and the temple at which the diplomat Giang Van Minh is worshiped.

D. WRITING**I. Complete the with the correct answer, using the given words.**

start decided tired looked on sky mountain shouted
nobody into down in arrived above stopped

Terence Magee likes walking in the mountains. Last week, he was (1) holiday with his family (2) Scotland. One afternoon, he was on his way (3) a mountain when he (4) at a chairlift. There was (5) on it. But Mr Magee was (6), so he jumped (7) one of the chairs and the chairlift lifted him up into the (8) A few seconds later, the lift (9) Mr Magee waited, but the lift didn't (10) again.

He (11) down. He was about fifteen metres (12) the ground, so he (13) that it wasn't a good idea to jump down. He waved and (14), but it was no good. There was nobody on the (15) Soon it was dark and it was very cold.

II. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. Your work is better than mine.
→ My work _____
2. Dick is the youngest in the family.
→ Nobody _____
3. I lose the key, so I cannot get into the house.
→ If _____
4. They are too young to join the army.
→ They are not _____
5. She won't come unless you invite her
→ If _____

6. We can't hang the picture on the wall. It is heavy.

→ The picture _____

7. They were tired. They were hungry.

→ They were not only _____

8. They finish their work. They went home.

→ Finishing _____

9. She goes out in the rain. She gets wet.

→ If _____

10. Tom can't lift the table. He isn't strong enough.

→ Tom is _____

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Choose the word whose main stress is placed differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. A. beneath | B. scissors | C. wardrobe | D. cover |
| 2. A. frying | B. towel | C. socket | D. include |
| 3. A. chemical | B. precaution | C. electric | D. destruction |
| 4. A. remember | B. dangerous | C. vegetable | D. opposite |

II. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

- Nga eats more _____ than Tung does because she likes fast food. **(healthy)**
- Viet Nam is a _____ country with different peoples, religions and traditions. **(cultural)**
- Most of the Central Highlands is _____. **(mountain)**
- The _____ houses of many ethnic groups are used to worship the ancestors. **(commune)**
- To become friendlier, you should _____ with your workmates. **(socialisation)**
- Paul used to be _____ to soft drinks, but now he seldom drinks them. **(addiction)**
- Like my aunt, I want to become a professional dog _____. **(train)**
- I am _____ of her hometown with a lot of paddy fields. **(envy)**
- The cattle are herded to a new pasture by the _____. **(nomadic)**
- Do villagers today dress _____ as in the past? **(tradition)**

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- _____ is a large piece of furniture where you can hang your clothes.
A. Wardrobe B. Refrigerator C. Desk D. Counter
- Alec said to _____ that he was lucky to be alive.
A. he B. his C. himself D. myself
- Children _____ drink milk every day. - It's good for them.
A. must B. ought C. don't have to D. must not

4. I think Angela _____ to buy that coat, it's really lovely.
A. must B. ought C. should D. have
5. We'll go swimming today _____ it's hot.
A. so B. because C. so that D. then
6. Let me _____ your bag.
A. carry B. to carry C. to carrying D. carrying
7. I tried _____ her name but I couldn't.
A. remember B. to remember C. remembering D. to remembering
8. We live in the room _____ the store.
A. above B. on C. over D. up
9. It'll take me an hour to do the household _____.
A. work B. chores C. job D. exercises
10. The _____ put too much salt in the food.
A. cook B. cooker C. stove D. oven
11. The Gong Festival is held _____ in the Central Highlands.
A. year B. which C. annual D. annually
12. _____ does Hoa Ban Festival take place? - In Lai Chau.
A. What B. Where C. When D. How
13. It is typical of the cultural life of _____ Thai people.
A. some B. a C. the D. Ø
14. _____ do the cattle provide for the nomads? - Dairy products, meat, and clothing.,
A. What B. Where C. Why D. How
15. The crops _____ on the weather.
A. depend heavy B. depend heavily
C. affect heavy D. affect heavily
16. Mai studies Maths a little bit _____.
A. bad B. badly C. good D. smartly
17. During the festival, they fly many _____ kites in different shapes and sizes.
A. colour B. colourless C. colourful D. colouring
18. An old woman was _____ the goats up the mountainside.
A. riding B. taking C. herding D. running
19. _____ is the festival celebrated? – Every year.
A. When B. How often C. How D. What
20. There are no high buildings to block _____ in our village.
A. view B. a view C. some view D. the view

IV. Read the following passage and choose the item (A, B, C or D) that best answers each of the questions about it.

Hi! My name is John. I live in Liverpool. Liverpool is a large city in the north of England. I live with my parents, my two brothers and my sister. We live in a large house.

In our house, there is a big kitchen, a dining room, a large living room, and a toilet. There is also a separate room for our washing machine and freezer. Upstairs there are five bedrooms, two bathrooms, and another toilet. Outside, there is a large garden. There are two garages.

1. Where does John live?
A. In England B. In Wales C. In Scotland D. In France
2. How many people are there in John's family?
A. 4 B. 5 C. 6 D. 7
3. How many rooms are there in John's house?
A. 10 B. 11 C. 13 D. 14
4. Dining room is the room in a house where you _____.
A. usually relax in comfortable chairs B. eat meals
C. cook food and wash dishes D. wash your body
5. Which of the following is not true?
A. John's family live in a large house.
B. John's house is big but doesn't have any gardens.
C. The kitchen in John's house is big.
D. John's house has two garages.

V. Choose the word (A, B, C, or D) that best fits each of the blank spaces.

Dear Grandma and Grandpa,

Hi! How are you? We're (1) _____.

Well, we finally moved! This is a picture (2) _____ the living room of our new house. It's really huge. There are lots of (3) _____ so it's very sunny. (4) _____, we don't have (5) _____ yet. We (6) _____ a beautiful couch actually, a sofa bed. We want (7) _____ an ultra-modern table to put (8) _____ of it. Please visit soon after we get our new couch.

Love,

Sharon and Alex

1. A. fine B. good C. well D. all are correct
2. A. on B. with C. about D. of
3. A. rooms B. windows C. couches D. cushions
4. A. Of course B. For example C. Because D. Soon
5. A. much furniture B. many furnitures C. much furnitures D. many furniture
6. A. buy B. buys C. are buying D. bought
7. A. get B. getting C. to get D. to getting
8. A. beside B. behind C. in front D. next

VI. Fill each blank with *a*, *an* or *the* to complete the following passage.

(1) _____ history of Da Nang Museum of Cham Sculpture started in 1891 when (2) _____ French scientist began to collect Cham sculptures that had been discovered in scattered areas of Quang Nam Province and brought them to Da Nang.

(3) _____ first museum building was designed by French architects, and construction began in 1951 and was finished by May 1916.

(4) _____ Museum has played (5) _____ important role in preserving sculpture items featuring (6) _____ cultural, spiritual and ritual lives of (7) _____ Cham people. They arranged (8) _____ displays in order to (9) _____ areas where (10) _____ objects were found.

VII. Read the passage and complete with the correct prepositions.

We send our children (1) _____ school to prepare them (2) _____ the time when they will be big and will have to work (3) _____ themselves. They learn their own language so that they will be able to tell others clearly what they want and what they know and understand what others tell them. They learn foreign languages (4) _____ order to be able to benefit (5) _____ what people (6) _____ other countries have written and said, and in order to make people (7) _____ other countries understand what they themselves mean. Nearly everything they study (8) _____ school has some practical use (9) _____ their life. We go to school (10) _____ all to learn how to learn, so that, when we have left school, we can continue to learn.

VIII. Write full sentences about the Cham ethnic group, using the words and phrases given. Add words if necessary to make sentences meaningful.

1. The Cham ethnic group/ a population/ about 100,000.

2. They/ live mostly/ the coast/ between Ninh Thuan/ Binh Thuan Provinces/ or/ the Cambodian border/ around Chau Doc.

3. The Cham/ a tradition/ wet rice cultivation.

4. Handicrafts/ fairly well-developed/ especially silkworm textiles/ handmade pottery wares.

5. Both men/ women/ wear/ long-piece sarongs/ cloth wrappers.

6. Main colour/ their daily dress/ cotton white.

7. Chief means/ transporting goods/ farm produce/ black-basket.

8. Most important festival/ called *Bon Kate*/ held/ near the Cham towers/ the tenth month/ the Lunar year.

IX. Rewrite the sentence that has the same meaning with the previous sentence.

1. I fed the chickens this morning.

→ The chickens

2. The question is so difficult that all the students can't answer it.

→ It is such

3. It is 5 years since Tom and Mary got married.

→ Tom and Mary.....

4. The film was so boring that I fell asleep.

→ Because

5. Although the weather was bad, it did not delay the traffic.

→ In spite of

6. They built a new bridge over the river.

→ A new bridge.....

7. You feel unhealthy because you don't take any exercise.

→ If you

8. I last wrote to my pen-pal two months ago.

→ I haven't.....

9. Although he is strong, he can't move that stone.

→ In spite

10. Where does your brother work?" she asked me.

→ She asked me

Unit 4

OUR CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS

PART 1: vocabulary and GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

Word	Type	Pronunciation	Meaning
accept	(v)	/ək'sept/	chấp nhận, nhận
break with	(v)	/breɪk wɪð/	không theo
clockwise	(adv)	/'klɒkwaɪz/	theo chiều kim đồng hồ
compliment	(n)	/'kɒmplɪmənt/	lời khen
course	(n)	/kɔ:s/	món ăn
cutlery	(n)	/'kʌtləri/	bộ đồ ăn (gồm thìa, đĩa, dao)
filmstrip	(n)	/'fɪlmstri:p/	đoạn phim
host	(n)	/həʊst/	chủ nhà (nam)
hostess	(n)	/'həʊstəs/	chủ nhà (nữ)
generation	(n)	/,dʒenə'reɪʃn/	thế hệ
offspring	(n)	/'ɒfsprɪŋ/	con cái
oblige	(v)	/ə'blaɪdʒ/	bắt buộc
palm	(n)	/pɑ:m/	lông bàn tay
pass down	(v)	/pɑ:s daʊn/	truyền cho
prong	(n)	/prɒŋ/	đầu đĩa (phần có răng)
reflect	(v)	/rɪ'flekt/	phản ánh
sharp	(adv)	/ʃɑ:p/	chính xác, đúng

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. SHOULD

1. Chúng ta dùng “should” với động từ nguyên mẫu (do, go...):

I should do a lot of homework tonight.

Dùng “should” giống nhau cho tất cả các ngôi:

I/ you/ he/ she/ it/ we/ they should come.

2. Thể phủ định là “shouldn’t”:

You shouldn’t work all day.

3. Chúng ta dùng “I should” hoặc “We should” đề nghị những điều tốt chúng ta nên làm:

I should go home. It’s midnight.

We should invite them to our wedding.

Chúng ta dùng “I shouldn’t” hoặc “We shouldn’t” nói về những việc không nên làm vì chúng không có lợi cho chúng ta:

I shouldn’t eat so much food.

Chúng ta dùng “should/ shouldn’t đưa ra lời khuyên:

You should look for a better place to eat.

“Should” được dùng có tác dụng không mạnh mẽ bằng “must” hoặc “have to”. Hãy so sánh:

You should drink more milk. (It’s a good idea.)

You must drink more milk, said the doctor. (It’s very important)

4. Chúng ta sử dụng dạng câu hỏi “Should I/ we...?” để xin lời khuyên:

What should I say to Peter?

I need a new passport. Where should I go?

5. Chúng ta có thể nói “I think we should”, “I don’t think you should” v.v... khi đưa ra ý kiến:

I think we should get two tickets.

Chúng ta thường không nói: *I think you shouldn’t*

Chúng ta có thể sử dụng **“Do you think I should...?”** để xin lời khuyên:

Tom hasn’t replied to my letter. Do you think I should phone him?

II. HAVE TO

1. Cách dùng: Chỉ sự bắt buộc ai đó phải làm gì theo yêu cầu của người khác

2. Công thức: Sử dụng “have to” như một động từ thường.

(+) **S + have/ has to + V (infinitive)**

(-) **S + don’t/ doesn’t have to + V (infinitive)**

(?) **Do/ Does + S + have to + V (infinitive)?**

→ *Yes, S + do/ does.*

→ *No, S + don’t/ doesn’t.*

3. Ví dụ

- I **have to** wear school uniform on Monday and Friday. (*The school insists.*)
- He **has to** be at cafeteria at 8 p.m this evening. (*He has got the appointment.*)

PART 2: EXERCISE

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>s</u> ound | B. <u>t</u> ouch | C. <u>d</u> own | D. acc <u>o</u> unt |
| 2. A. de <u>s</u> ign | B. pre <u>s</u> erve | C. ba <u>s</u> ic | D. phys <u>i</u> cal |
| 3. A. occu <u>p</u> ation | B. occa <u>s</u> ion | C. sha <u>k</u> e | D. mira <u>c</u> ulous |
| 4. A. conce <u>r</u> ned | B. recei <u>v</u> ed | C. attache <u>d</u> | D. concea <u>l</u> ed |
| 5. A. tea <u>c</u> her | B. clea <u>r</u> | C. rea <u>s</u> on | D. mea <u>n</u> |

- | | | | |
|--------------------------------|--|---|---------------------------------------|
| 6. A. <u>l</u> etter | B. tw <u>e</u> lve | C. p <u>e</u> rson | D. s <u>e</u> ntence |
| 7. A. <u>i</u> ncluded | B. r <u>e</u> ceived | C. r <u>e</u> m <u>e</u> m <u>b</u> er <u>e</u> d | D. a <u>n</u> no <u>y</u> ed |
| 8. A. <u>e</u> nough | B. y <u>o</u> ung | C. c <u>o</u> untry | D. m <u>o</u> untain |
| 9. A. s <u>p</u> ee <u>c</u> h | B. M <u>a</u> r <u>c</u> h | C. m <u>a</u> ch <u>i</u> ne | D. <u>c</u> h <u>i</u> ldr <u>e</u> n |
| 10. A. f <u>a</u> ce | B. c <u>o</u> mm <u>e</u> rc <u>i</u> al | C. c <u>e</u> nter | D. <u>c</u> ity |

II. Choose the words that have the different stress from the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. A. resident | B. cutlery | C. ancestor | D. permission |
| 2. A. generation | B. presentation | C. necessity | D. obligation |
| 3. A. respect | B. mention | C. expert | D. worship |
| 4. A. pagoda | B. complement | C. society | D. tradition |
| 5. A. custom | B. explain | C. chopstick | D. manner |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

- Is he _____ to break the customs of her family? (**permission**)
- Today, we are going to discuss the _____ of traditions. (**necessary**)
- The offspring will follow the customs without _____. (**oblige**)
- My dad is the _____ of this wedding anniversary party. (**hostess**)
- Do you have to follow the traditions _____? (**strict**)
- Ao dai is one of the _____ items of Vietnam. (**tradition**)
- She was taught a lot _____ skills by my parents. (**society**)
- In some ethnic groups, the elderly _____ their next generations to accept the customs. (**obligation**)
- I have learned several _____ lessons from the folk tales. (**morally**)
- We were impressed by the _____ of Ha Long Bay. (**beautiful**)

II. Complete the sentences with a form of “have to” or “should”. Make the verbs negative when necessary.

- You _____ come with me if you don't want to. I'll go on my own.
- If you need some help with your homework, you _____ go to the library.
- If you have a ticket, you _____ queue. You can go straight in.
- You _____ tell lies. It's wrong.
- Nick works too much. I think he _____ take it easy.
- Your hair's too long. I think you _____ get it cut.
- Your clothes are dirty. You _____ wash them.
- I'm going to bed. I _____ get up early tomorrow.
- I'd like to meet your best friend. You _____ invite him/ her round.
- I _____ tell my parents where I am, then they don't worry.

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

- My parents usually work very early.
A. go to B. going to C. went D. to go
- There is a computer the middle the room.
A. in / of B. in / in C. on / of D. on / in
- Nam has to leave to tidy his room every day.
A. should B. must C. ought to D. need to
- Nga have a holiday in Da Lat next summer.
A. is going B. will to C. are going to D. is going to
- Lan isn't to go to school today.
A. enough well B. enough good C. well enough D. good enough
- Boys and girls, you'll have to do this experiment this afternoon.
A. youself B. yourselves C. yourself D. youselves
- We must put all the small objects such as beads out children's reach.
A. of B. in C. on D. to
- You are too thin. You eat much more meat.
A. ought B. ought not C. ought to D. ought not to
- I and my pen friend Ho Chi Minh's Mausoleum last Sunday.
A. visit B. visited C. visits D. visiting
- Let us to the school's library next Monday.
A. going B. to go C. to going D. go
- Peter doesn't talk much in public. He's rather
A. kind B. sociable C. humorous D. reserved
- You must not let children play in the street because it is
A. suitable B. dangerous C. safe D. careful
- He'll come to pick you
A. over / up B. over / on C. in / up D. on / in
- The sun always in the East and in the West.
A. rise/ set B. rises/ set C. rises/ sets D. has risen/ set
- He spends most of his time charity work.
A. to do B. did C. doing D. with doing

C. READING

I. Read the conversation and choose the correct answer.

Hoa: Hello, Lan.

Lan: Hi, Hoa. You seem (1)

Hoa: I am. I (2) a letter from my friend Nien today.

Lan: Do I know her?

Hoa: I don't think so. She was my next - door neighbor (3) Hue.

Lan: What does she look (4)?

Hoa: Oh. She's beautiful. Here is her photograph.

Lan: What a lovely smile! Was she your classmate?

Hoa: Oh, no. She was (5) to be in my class.

1. A. happy B. happily C. more happy D. more happily
2. A. receive B. received C. receives D. receiving
3. A. on B. at C. to D. in
4. A. likes B. liked C. like D. to like
5. A. old not enough B. enough old not
C. not old enough D. not enough old

II. Read the passage about family traditions in Viet Nam, and fill in the blanks with the suitable words.

importance there because ancestors by
arrange more responsible look after

Marriage and family are very important in Viet Nam. In the countryside, parents often (1) _____ marriages; divorce remains uncommon, though is (2) _____ frequent in cities. In traditional Vietnamese families, roles are rigid. The man of the house is primarily (3) _____ for the family's economic well-being. Older children help to (4) _____ after younger siblings. Discipline is viewed as a parental duty.

The woman of the house looks (5) _____ her parents, husband and children. In rural areas, women also do much agricultural work. Vietnamese women live (6) _____ the "four virtues": hard work, beauty, refined speech and excellent conduct.

The Vietnamese attach great (7) _____ to two traditional family obligations: to care for their parents in their old age and to worship them after death. In each Vietnamese family, (8) _____ is at least one altar on which there are the pictures of their ancestors. Family members worship their ancestors (9) _____ they think parents after death will go to live in another world and this altar is the place where the ancestors' souls live in. As a result, every day Vietnamese people lay flowers or sometimes fruits on the altar for the belief that those (10) _____ will enjoy them.

III. Read the passage about introducing Vietnamese customs to foreigners, and then choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

The Vietnamese are known to be polite, hospitable and sensitive. They have a casual and friendly (1) _____. They regard friendship as being very important throughout one's life. They are always open to visits from friends. Drop-in visits are welcome. The Vietnamese are very (2) _____ to their family.

When they (3) _____ you a gift, the Vietnamese will usually speak lightly about it. Even though it is an expensive gift, they may pretend it is of no great monetary value.

(4) _____ 4,000 years of civilization, the Vietnamese are proud people who like to recite to a myth that they are descendants of an angel and a dragon.

If you happen to be in their homes at meal time, the Vietnamese will probably (5) _____ you to sit down and share whatever food is (6) _____. Let them know that you enjoy their food is one way in successfully (7) _____ a better relationship with them.

When they invite you to their homes for a meal, celebration, or special occasion, some (8) _____ - usually food, fruits, chocolate or liquors - should be offered to the host's family.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. tradition | B. feature | C. culture | D. manner |
| 2. A. closed | B. closing | C. close | D. being closed |
| 3. A. offer | B. carry | C. send | D. sell |
| 4. A. Of | B. With | C. At | D. In |
| 5. A. take | B. require | C. speak | D. invite |
| 6. A. good | B. present | C. available | D. delicious |
| 7. A. setting | B. building | C. taking | D. being |
| 8. A. gifts | B. invitations | C. offers | D. situations |

D. WRITING

I. Complete the sentences using “should” or “shouldn’t” .

Ex: You **shouldn’t** study (You/ study) so hard. Have a holiday.

I enjoyed that play. We **should go** (We/ go) to the theatre more often.

- _____ (You/ park) here. It’s not allowed.
- What _____ (I/ cook) for breakfast this morning?
- _____ (You/ wear) a raincoat. It’s raining outside.
- _____ (You/ smoke). It’s bad for you.
- _____ (We/ arrive) at the airport two hours before the flight.
- _____ (I/ send) now or later?
- Do you think _____ (I/ apply) for this post?
- What do you think _____ (I/ write) in this space on the form?
- _____ (I/ eat) cakes anymore. I’ve already eaten too much.
- This food is awful. _____ (We/ complain) to the manager.
- Which dress do you think _____ (I/ buy)?

II. Rewrite and complete the sentences using “should”.

Ex: If I were you, I’d go to the doctor’s.

➔ I think **you should go to the doctor’s**.

- It’s a good idea to wear a warm coat.
You
- My advice is to leave early.
I think you.....
- It’s a good idea to take more exercise.
You
- In my opinion, it’s a good idea for you to read a lot.
I think
- It’s a good idea to do that.
You
- My advice is for you to ride a bike.
I think
- If I were you, I would buy a dog.
I think

III. Find and correct the mistakes of these sentences

1. He don't go to the class today.

.....

2. I didn't went to the cinema last night.

.....

3. Mr Brown doesn't lives in a big city. He lives in the countryside.

.....

4. My sister hasn't breakfast very often.

.....

5. Phuc isn't enough strong to lift the bag.

.....

6. They have a full of flowers garden.

.....

7. They no from Greece.

.....

8. This coffee is too heavy for drink.

.....

9. Our new car is greens.

.....

10. Mr and Mrs John is on holiday.

.....

11. The farmer is worked in the field now.

.....

12. We finished our dinner half a hour ago.

.....

13. Ian paid for the tickets and left.

.....

14. Mrs. John alway goes to work by bus.

.....

15. Rivers usually flow from the sea.

.....

16. Do you know that man whose is smoking over there?

.....

17. How many do you read a newspaper? - 3 times a week.

.....

18. If it costs too many, I'll buy a small one.

.....

19. I will gives it to them when they visit us.

.....

20. As so as he finishes his work, he will go home.

.....

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>c</u> anoe | B. w <u>a</u> ter | C. su <u>g</u> ar | D. is <u>l</u> and |
| 2. A. r <u>e</u> sort | B. h <u>o</u> tel | C. ex <u>ce</u> pt | D. r <u>e</u> scue |
| 3. A. s <u>i</u> ght | B. t <u>r</u> ibe | C. seas <u>i</u> de | D. magn <u>i</u> ficient |
| 4. A. r <u>a</u> ilway | B. d <u>a</u> ily | C. <u>a</u> irport | D. t <u>r</u> ain |
| 5. A. is <u>l</u> and | B. flor <u>i</u> st | C. s <u>t</u> ream | D. s <u>i</u> ght |

II. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

- What is your friend's age?
 - How long is your friend?
 - How old is your friend?
 - How is your friend?
 - How tall is your friend?
- The coffee is very weak. It didn't keep us awake.
 - The coffee is not strong enough to keep us awake.
 - The coffee is too strong to keep us awake.
 - The coffee is not weak enough to keep us awake.
 - The coffee is weak enough to keep us awake.
- Shall we go to the cinema at 7.00?
 - Why do we have to go to the cinema at 7.00?
 - Which cinema shall we go to at 7.00?
 - Let's go to the cinema at 7.00.
 - I don't like to go to the cinema at 7.00.
- It is important for you to find the book.
 - You ought to not to find the book.
 - You mustn't find the book.
 - You can find the book if you want.
 - You have to find the book.
- Mike painted the house without any help.
 - Someone helped Mike paint the house.
 - Mike painted the house and helped some.
 - Mike painted the house himself.
 - Mike didn't paint the house alone.

III. Rewrite the sentences using "should/ shouldn't".

- Don't touch this switch.
→ This switch
- It isn't a good idea for you to put so much salt in the soup.
→ You shouldn't

3. It isn't a good idea for you to drink so much alcohol.
→ You shouldn't
4. Don't trip over the step into the kitchen.
→ You shouldn't
5. You can't park here because it's a restricted area.
→ You shouldn't
6. Why didn't they tell me about these changes earlier?
→ I should have been
7. Don't lean against the newly-painted wall.
→ You shouldn't
8. Don't smoke too many cigarettes.
→ You shouldn't
9. Children are advised to go to bed early.
→ Children should
10. You had better not to stay up late.
→ You shouldn't

IV. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. The *wai* is the traditional _____ of people in Thailand.
A. greeting B. hello C. goodbye D. greetings
2. When two Maori people meet, they _____ each other's noses.
A. take B. feel C. touch D. kiss
3. Do you know the _____ way to welcome people in Tibet?
A. custom B. customer C. customary D. tradition
4. The xoe dance is a spiritual _____ of Thai ethnic people.
A. customs B. tradition C. habit D. dance
5. In Viet Nam you shouldn't use only the first name to _____ people older than you.
A. address B. talk C. say D. speak
6. We are going to prepare _____ sticky rice served with grilled chicken for the celebration.
A. five-coloured B. five-colours C. five-colour D. five colours
7. A tradition is something special that is _____ through the generations.
A. passed B. passed to C. passed down D. passed out
8. According to the _____ in England, we have to use a knife and fork at dinner.
A. table ways B. table manners C. behaviours D. differences
9. We have to _____ our shoes when we go inside a pagoda.
A. put on B. give off C. turn off D. take off
10. In Australia, you shouldn't _____ on a person's accent.
A. dislike B. criticize C. hate D. comment

V. Read the information about customs in some countries, and then give the answers to the questions.

Canada and the US: Don't arrive early if you're invited to someone's home.

Indonesia: Never point to anything with your foot.

Korea: Don't pass something to an older person or superior with only one hand.

Muslim countries: Don't eat with your left hand.

Samoa: Don't eat while you're walking in public.

Thailand: Never touch anyone except a child on the head.

1. In which country is foot considered a dirty part of the body?

.....

2. In which country should we pay attention to eating in public?

.....

3. In which country/ countries should we eat with the right hand?

.....

4. In which country/ countries shouldn't we arriving early at a party?

.....

5. In which country should you show high respect to older people or superiors?

.....

VI. Read the passage and answer the questions below

David wants to buy a Christmas present for a very special person, his mother. David's father gives him \$5.00 pocket money a week and David puts \$2.00 a week into his bank account. After three months David takes \$20.00 out of his bank account and goes to the shopping mall. He looks and looks for a perfect gift.

Suddenly he sees a beautiful brooch in the shape of his favourite pet. He says to himself, "My mother loves jewelry, and the brooch costs only \$17.00." He buys the brooch and takes it home. He wraps the present in Christmas paper and places it under the tree. He is very excited and he is looking forward to Christmas morning to see the joy on his mother's face.

But when his mother opens the present she screams with fright because she sees a spider.

1. Who does David get his money from?

.....

2. What does David want to buy his Mother?

.....

3. How much money does David take to the mall?

.....

4. What does David buy his mother?

.....

5. What does David do with the present when he takes it home?

.....

6. Why does David's mother scream?

.....

7. Why does David buy a spider brooch?

.....

8. Where does David put the present on Christmas Eve?

.....

VII. Complete the conversation between Nick and Mai about Vietnamese table manners with the sentences given (A-H). Practise the conversation with your partner.

A. No. You should wait to be shown where to sit, and the oldest person should sit first.

B. Yeah, you should try to finish everything on your plate.

C. You should bring a small gift, such as fruits, sweets, flowers...

D. You shouldn't bring handkerchiefs, anything black, or yellow flowers.

E. They are chopsticks and a flat spoon.

E. You should rest your chopsticks on top of your rice bowl.

G. Yes, and remember to cover your mouth when using a toothpick.

H. Chopsticks should be placed on the table or a chopstick holder after a few mouthful or when breaking to drink or speak.

Peter: What should I do first if I am invited to a Vietnamese home for dinner, Huong?

Huong: (1)

Peter: Which kinds of gift shouldn't I bring?

Huong: (2)

Peter: Can I sit at the dining table as I would like to?

Huong: (3)

Peter: What are the most common utensils for a meal in Viet Nam?

Huong: (4)

Peter: Where should I place my chopsticks when breaking to drink or speak?

Huong: (5)

Peter: Is there anything else that I have to pay attention to during the meal?

Huong: (6)

Peter: What should I do when I finish dinner?

Huong: (7)

Peter: Do Vietnamese people often use toothpicks after finishing a meal?

Huong: (8)

Peter: Thank you so much, Mai.

Huong: You're welcome. I hope you'll enjoy having a meal with a Vietnamese household.

VIII. Choose the sentence that has the same meaning as the first.

1. As a tradition, we visit our grandparents on Lunar New Year.

A. Our grandparents traditionally visit us on Lunar New Year.

B. We traditionally visited our grandparents on Lunar New Year,

C. Our grandparents are traditionally visited on Lunar New Year.

2. When I'm home, I have to say hello to everyone in my family.
A. Saying hello to everyone in my family when I'm home is I must.
B. I must go home to say hello to everyone in my family.
C. Everyone in my family says hello to me when I'm home.
3. When you are invited to a dinner, you shouldn't be late.
A. You are late for a dinner, let me invite you once.
B. If someone invites you to a dinner, please be late.
C. Don't be late if someone invites you to a dinner.
4. The elderly will give lucky money to the children at Tet.
A. The elderly will be given lucky money to the children at Tet.
B. Lucky money will be given to the children by the elderly at Tet.
C. Lucky money will be given by the children at Tet.
5. In Britain, citizens mainly use cutlery to eat meals.
A. British eat meals mainly by using cutlery.
B. British eat main meals with cutlery.
C. British used to eat meals with cutlery in the past.

IX. Find the mistakes of the sentences.

1. The girl is not enough tall to touch the top of the shelf.
A B C D
2. I am going to playing chess with my friend tonight.
A B C D
3. You have to making sure children don't put anything into the sockets.
 A B C D
4. Nam drew the picture hissself because his sister didn't help him.
A B C D
5. He worked with people who could neither speak and hear.
A B C D

Unit 5

FESTIVALS IN VIETNAM

PART 1: vocabulary and GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

Word	Type	Pronunciation	Meaning
anniversary	(n)	/ˌænɪˈvɜːsəri/	ngày kỉ niệm
archway	(n)	/'ɑːtʃweɪ/	mái vòm
carnival	(n)	/'kɑːnɪvl/	lễ hội
ceremony	(n)	/'serəməni/	ngghi lễ
clasp	(v)	/klaːsp/	bắt tay
commemorate	(v)	/kə'meməreit/	kỉ niệm, tưởng niệm
command	(n)	/kə'mɑːnd/	hiệu lệnh
companion	(n)	/kəm'pæniən/	bạn đồng hành
defeat	(v)	/di'fi:t/	đánh bại
emperor	(n)	/'empərə(r)/	đế chế
float	(v)	/fləʊt/	thả trôi nổi
gong	(n)	/gɒŋ/	cồng (nhạc cụ dân tộc)
rice flake	(n)	/raɪs /fleɪk/	cốm
incense	(n)	/'ɪnsens/	hương, nhang
invader	(n)	/ɪn'veɪdə(r)/	kẻ xâm lược
joyful	(adj)	/'dʒɔɪfl/	vui vẻ
lantern	(n)	/'læntən/	đèn trời, đèn thả sông
offering	(n)	/'ɒfərɪŋ/	lễ vật, tặng phẩm
procession	(n)	/prə'sesjən/	đám rước
preserve	(v)	/prɪ'zɜːv/	bảo tồn
ritual	(n)	/'rɪtʃuəl/	ngghi thức (trong lễ hội, tôn giáo)
royal court music		/'rɔɪəl kɔːt 'mjuːzɪk/	nhã nhạc cung đình
worship	(v)	/'wɜːʃɪp/	tôn thờ, thờ cúng ai

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW**I. Simple sentences and compound sentences**

1. Simple sentence (Câu đơn): 1 câu đơn là 1 câu chỉ chứa 1 mệnh đề gồm chủ ngữ và vị ngữ

2. Compound sentence (Câu ghép): 1 câu ghép gồm 2 hoặc 3 mệnh đề độc lập hay những câu đơn được nối với nhau, sử dụng các từ nối như: **and; or; but; so;...**

II. Complex sentences (câu phức)

Câu phức bao gồm một mệnh đề độc lập (mệnh đề chính) và ít nhất một mệnh đề phụ thuộc, sử dụng các từ phụ tố trước mệnh đề phụ như: **when; while; because; although; even though; if ...**

Examples:

- She felt sad **because** she failed her written examination.
- **Although** Peter tried to get up early, he went to school late.
- I am looking forward to the trip now; **therefore**, I can't focus on anything.

PART 2 : EXERCISE**A. PHONETICS****I. Find the word which has different sound in the part underlined.**

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. mention | B. question | C. action | D. education |
| 2. A. populated | B. loaded | C. harvested | D. lived |
| 3. A. community | B. computer | C. museum | D. customs |
| 4. A. minority | B. ethnic | C. tradition | D. religion |

II. Choose the words that have the different stress from the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. incense | B. ritual | C. preserve | D. fortune |
| 2. A. scenery | B. invader | C. childhood | D. archway |
| 3. A. historian | B. speciality | C. oriental | D. preparation |
| 4. A. belonging | B. fisherman | C. procession | D. performance |
| 5. A. commemorate | B. companion | C. reunion | D. ceremony |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR**I. Complete the table of verbs with appropriate nouns.**

Verbs	Nouns	Verbs	Nouns
1. concentrate		16. organize	
2. compose		17. compare	
3. consider		18. attend	
4. construct		19. recognize	
5. coordinate		20. animate	
6. depress		21. consume	

7. donate		22. explode	
8. erect		23. discuss	
9. found		24. celebrate	
10. locate		25. educate	
11. apply		26. commemorate	
12. generate		27. invade	
13. oblige		28. preserve	
14. reflect		29. recommend	
15. converse		30. present	

II. Choose the best answer.

- You should _____ information about a custom or tradition.
A. finds B. found C. finding D. find
- A custom is something that has become an _____ way of doing things.
A. to be accept B. to accept C. accepting D. accepted
- In the UK, there are lots of customs for table manners. For example, we _____ use a knife and fork at dinner.
A. have to B. are having C. has to D. having to
- In Viet Nam, you _____ use only the first name to address people older than you.
A. should B. must C. shouldn't D. have to
- At the Mid-Autumn Festival, kids can sing, dance, and enjoy moon-cakes. _____, every child likes it very much.
A. However B. Moreover C. Because D. Therefore
- In 2010, Ha Noi _____ its 1000th anniversary.
A. celebrated B. commemorated C. worshipped D. remembered
- Tet is an occasion for family _____ in Viet Nam.
A. visitings B. meeting C. reunions D. seeings
- _____ spring comes, many Vietnamese villages prepare for a new festival season.
A. While B. When C. Nevertheless D. However
- The flight _____ at 6.10 has been delayed.
A. leave B. which leaves C. leaving D. B&C
- This is the first time she _____ rice paddies.
A. will see B. sees C. has seen D. saw
- Would you mind _____ I borrowed your dictionary?
A. if B. when C. that D. Ø
- We _____ lots of photos on vacation last summer.
A. had B. took C. did D. made
- The animal _____ in the forest fire was a wild pig.
A. hurt B. hurted C. hurts D. hurting

14. Would you mind _____ the window?
A. to close B. closing C. about closing D. closed
15. Welcome _____ Springfield!
A. at B. to C. in D. for
16. Accommodation in London _____ very expensive.
A. is B. are C. has D. have
17. The road _____ down to the sea is very rough.
A. goes B. going C. to go D. gone
18. _____ is a large hole in the side of a mountain or under the ground.
A. Waterfall B. Cave C. Bay D. Lake
19. The vase _____ on the shelf is very beautiful.
A. stands B. standing C. is standing D. stood
20. Do you mind if I _____ your atlas for a minute?
A. borrow B. will borrow C. am going to borrow D. borrowed
21. Ann asked me not _____ anybody what happened.
A. tell B. telling C. to tell D. told
22. After _____ breakfast, I went out for a walk.
A. finish B. having finished C. finished D. had finished
23. _____ is a type of white or gray stone containing calcium, used for building and making cement.
A. Slope B. Limestone C. Site D. Sand
24. China has huge _____ and onshore oil reserves.
A. seaside B. remote C. outside D. offshore
25. Do you mind _____ here for just a minute?
A. to wait B. waiting C. about waiting D. waited
26. It was late, so we decided _____ a taxi home.
A. take B. to take C. taking D. took
27. The council should be able to help families who have no accommodation.
A. a place to live B. a place to watch sport matches
C. a place to buy meal and eat it D. a place to work
28. He picked the phone _____ as soon as it rang.
A. on B. up C. in D. off

III. Give the correct form of the following verbs

1. My mother always tells me that I have to _____ home by 9 p.m. **(be)**
2. When I came, the whole family _____ dinner around a big dinning table. **(have)**
3. Children should _____ things from adults with both hands. **(take)**
4. In Australia, you mustn't _____ on a person's accent. **(comment)**
5. Laura lives in a big city. If she _____ **(live)** in the country, she _____ **(have)** a dog.
6. I _____ **(learn)** Italian for the past three years.

7. If I were you, I _____ (**not / buy**) that book.
8. What the children _____ (**see**) in the zoo yesterday?
9. They prefer _____ (**play**) in a swimming pool all day.
10. The doctor will be ready in ten minutes. Take a seat while you _____. (**wait**)

C. READING

I. Choose the option that best fits each of the blank spaces.

Tet is a national and (1) _____ festival in Vietnam. It is an occasion for every Vietnamese to be reunited to think (2) _____ their past activities and hope for good luck (3) _____ the year to come.

Before Tet all houses are white washed and (4) _____ with yellow apricot flowers and colorful lanterns. Everybody is looking (5) _____ to a more favorable life. (6) _____ the New Year's Eve, children are smartly dressed. They are hoping to (7) _____ money put in small red envelopes as they are wishing longevity to their grandparents and parents. Wrong doings (8) _____ be absolutely avoided on these days.

1. A. traditional B. modern C. music D. summer
2. A. to B. about C. after D. for
3. A. in B. at C. on D. when
4. A. decorate B. decorates C. decorating D. decorated
5. A. at B. for C. after D. forward
6. A. In B. At C. On D. When
7. A. receive B. buy C. sell D. make
8. A. ought B. need C. should D. have

II. Read and complete the passage with words in the box.

spring	kept	celebrate	traditional
Because	Therefore	served	However

Tet is the biggest festival in Vietnam. To (1) Tet, Vietnamese people make many tasty (2) foods. The most important food includes **Chung** cakes, sausages, boiled chicken, (3) rolls, and sticky rice. Chung cake is made of sticky rice, pork, green beans, and other spices, wrapped in green leaves; (4) this cake needs a lot of preparation. This cake can be (5) for a long time, even though the weather is often humid during Tet. Other significant foods that cannot be missed to worship the ancestors are sausages, spring rolls, and sticky rice. (6) sausages are difficult to make, people often buy them from famous suppliers. (7), sticky rice and spring rolls are easier to prepare and must be (8) immediately after they are cooked, so they are often made at home.

III. Read the passage and answer these questions below.

TET holiday is celebrated on the first day of the Lunar New Year in Viet Nam. Some weeks before the New Year, the Vietnamese clean their houses and paint the walls. New clothes are bought for the occasion. One or two days before the festival, people make *Bank Chung*, which is

the traditional cake, and kinds of jam. On the New Year's Eve, the whole family gets together for a reunion dinner. Every member of the family should be present during the dinner in which many different kinds of dishes are served. On the New Year morning, the young member of the family pays their respects to the elders. And the children receive lucky money wrapped in red tiny envelops. Then people go to visit their neighbors, friends and relatives.

1. Is TET holiday celebrated on the second day of the Lunar New Year in Viet Nam?

.....

2. What do the Vietnamese often do some weeks before the New Year?

.....

3. Who do people often visit on TET holiday?

.....

4. How many kinds of dishes are served in the reunion dinner?

.....

IV. Read the passage and fill in the blanks with the correct words.

Teachers Day (1) _____ on the first of September each year. Generally, it is (2) _____ for school children to show (3) _____ appreciation to their teachers who (4) _____ guided them in their (5) _____. It is a time to (6) _____ the bad experiences students may have (7) _____ their teachers scolding and punishing them. Students (8) _____ their teachers flowers and gifts. Such gestures are small in (9) _____ to the teacher's dedication and hard work. Parties are held and there is an (10) _____ of fun and amusement in the school.

D. WRITING

I. Identify a mistake in each sentence and correct it.

1. In Australia, you mustn't to comment on a person's accent.

.....

2. In my family, children has to get permission before leaving the dining table.

.....

3. When I came, the whole family is having dinner around a big dining table.

.....

4. Lang Lieu couldn't buy any special food while he was very poor.

.....

II. Combine each pair of sentences to make one sentence, using the words given in brackets.

1. Lang Lieu couldn't buy any special food. He was very poor. **(because)**

.....

2. During Tet, Vietnamese people buy all kinds of sweets. They make Chung cakes as well. **(so)**

.....

3. The Hung King Temple Festival was a local festival. It has become a public holiday in Viet Nam since 2007. **(however)**

.....

.....

4. At the Mid-Autumn Festival, kids can sing, dance, and enjoy mooncakes. Every child likes it very much. **(therefore)**

.....

5. The water is highly polluted. We cannot swim in this part of the river. **(because)**

.....

6. Mr. Minh is admired. He dedicates all his life to protecting environment. **(since)**

.....

7. Give me a ring. You'll hear some news. **(when)**

.....

8. The TV program will end. I'll do my homework. **(after)**

.....

9. I'll go to work. I'll have a bath. **(before)**

.....

10. She'll in Paris. She'll visit friends. **(while)**

.....

III. Complete sentences, using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.

1. On New Year's Eve, the Vietnamese put fruits/ the altar, and they also arrange watermelon/ traditional cakes/ as *Chung* cakes.

.....

2. While many people/ go to pagodas or churches/ New Year's Day to pray/ the coming year, many others/ remain in their home in/ of the altar/ welcome the ancestors through prayer.

.....

3. Although people from Western countries/ not follow ancestor worship, ancestor worship/ consider a type of religious practices/ some Asian countries.

.....

4. Because *Xoan* singing is still in the memory/ folk artists/ Phu Tho Province, they always/ try their best/ hand down offspring the old style of singing in the activities/ the clubs.

.....

5. The Giong Festival/ held/ the 6th/ the 12th/ the 4th lunar month/ several venues around Ha Noi.

.....

6. The festival/ commemorate/ Saint Giong/ who/ defeat/ the An.

.....

7. It/ also/ an opportunity/ hope for abundant harvests/ happy lives/ and express patriotism.

8. During/ festival/ villagers/ the statue bathing/ processions of bamboo flowers/ Soc Temple.

9. The festival/ provide/ many entertaining activities/ including/ folk games/ traditional singing performances.

10. The festival/ recognized/ UNESCO/ as an intangible cultural heritage/ mankind.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. fest <u>iv</u> al | B. m <u>a</u> n | C. f <u>a</u> t | D. gr <u>a</u> nd |
| 2. A. car <u>o</u> l | B. to <u>m</u> b | C. pat <u>r</u> on | D. cust <u>o</u> m |
| 3. A. up <u>s</u> et | B. cu <u>s</u> tom | C. mu <u>s</u> eam | D. un <u>s</u> uitable |
| 4. A. sa <u>i</u> nt | B. ta <u>i</u> lor | C. expl <u>a</u> in | D. sa <u>i</u> d |
| 5. A. bea <u>ch</u> | B. cat <u>ch</u> | C. chu <u>rch</u> | D. Ch <u>r</u> istmas |

II. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each unfinished sentence below.

- Presents _____ in colored paper and put under the Christmas tree.
A. are wrapped B. are wrap C. are wraped D. are wrapping
- Tom likes _____. He spends lots of hours watching the birds.
A. bird-watching B. bird-watch C. watch-bird D. watching-bird
- Greg _____ me that he liked rock music.
A. said to B. told to C. asked D. explained
- Sally is quite keen _____ the idea.
A. in B. on C. of D. for
- Milk _____ cows and goats.
A. belongs to B. comes from C. is made of D. is made from
- _____ is a religious song that people sing at Christmas.
A. Carol B. Poem C. Christmas card D. Patron saint
- Galileo said that the earth _____ round.
A. was B. were C. has been D. was being
- They recently returned _____ Paris from London.
A. to B. for C. towards D. Ø

9. Could you talk _____?
A. more quiet B. quieter C. quietlier D. more quietly
10. I thanked my classmate _____ helping me with my homework.
A. for B. about C. of D. Ø
11. Halloween is the night of 31st October, when people once believed that ghosts _____.
A. can see B. can be seen C. could see D. could be seen
12. She _____ me she didn't know what to do.
A. said B. told C. asked D. suggested
13. Anita is fond _____ playing the piano.
A. in B. on C. of D. for
14. The fire is made _____ matches or lighters. It is made in the traditional way.
A. with B. without C. of D. by
15. She seems very _____ today.
A. sleepy B. sleepily C. happily D. seriously
16. Ten countries **participated in** the discussions.
A. took part in B. held C. went to D. arranged
17. The journey from the airport to the university _____ about half an hour.
A. spends B. takes C. want D. passes
18. _____ is a saint regarded as protecting a particular person or place.
A. Patron saint B. Blessed saint C. Holy saint D. Fairy godmother
19. The _____ festival was held in the communal house yard.
A. rice-cook B. rice-cooker C. rice-cooking D. rice-cooked
20. I _____ that I didn't know what to do.
A. said B. told C. asked D. suggested

III. Choose the underlined part that needs correction.

1. Christmas tree is usually decorated by colored lights and shiny balls.
A B C D
2. Chris said that the twins couldn't go to school this day because they were ill.
A B C D
3. If you are interested on helping, just show up on Saturday.
A B C D
4. Our teacher said that the sun always rises in the east.
A B C D
5. Many Vietnamese people prepare for the holiday by pay their debts and cleaning their homes.
A B C D

IV. Choose the option that best fits each of the blank spaces.

Harvest Festival is (1) _____ October. It is a very ancient (2) _____ but it is also a part of the Christian tradition. It (3) _____ new crops and food. Children often bring fruit,

vegetables and cereals into school. Schools usually give the food to hospitals or to old people. (4) _____ the past, people sometimes (5) _____ traditional dolls out of corn.

- | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|------------|
| 1. A. in | B. at | C. on | D. from |
| 2. A. thing | B. festival | C. vacation | D. holiday |
| 3. A. gives | B. supplies | C. celebrates | D. holds |
| 4. A. In | B. At | C. On | D. Since |
| 5. A. make | B. are making | C. making | D. made |

V. Read the following passage and choose the best answers to each of the questions below.

Hi! I'm Dean. I'm from England. My favorite time of the year is Christmas, which is on 25th December. That's when Christians celebrate the birth of Christ. In the middle of December we send a lot of cards to our friends and family, here and abroad. Then we get a big tree and **decorate** it with lights and other things. On Christmas Day, we give each other presents. We have one enormous meal with turkey, and after that, we have Christmas pudding.

- When is Christmas held?

A. On 25 December	B. In the middle of December
C. In the middle of the year	D. no information
- Christmas is held because Christians want to _____.

A. have a good time	B. celebrate the birth of Christ
C. visit their friends and family	D. decorate big trees
- What does the word '**decorate**' in line 4 mean?

A. make something look nicer	B. paint something
C. make something look worse	D. buy something
- On Christmas Day, people _____.

A. give each other presents	B. have an enormous meal with turkey
C. have Christmas pudding	D. all answers are correct
- Which of the following is not true?

A. Dean is English.
B. At Christmas, people get big trees and decorate it.
C. Dean prefers Halloween to Christmas.
D. In the middle of December, people send a lot of Christmas cards to their friends and family.

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Kate Festival is (1)_____ by the Cham people for 3 days at the beginning of October. This event is held in a large space in the three Champa Towers (Po Nagar, Po Klong Garai and Po Rome). The main purpose of the festival is to (2)_____ their heroes like Po Klong Garai and Po Rome. (3)_____, the festival is a chance for the local people to relax, to meet and wish one another (4)_____ in the future.

This is one of the biggest and most important events of the Cham people in Vietnam. (5)_____, it is a good opportunity for the visitors to explore the (6)_____ in the Cham culture, from architecture to costumes, instruments and traditional songs that are used to praise their kings in the past. The Kate festival in each tower starts at the same time on the same day, and the day after,

villages and families begin to hold their own rites. During the rite, the people (7)_____ their ancestors and gods with the help of a shaman, and then pray (8)_____ health and prosperity. The actual festivals (9)_____ after the rites. It is a combination of traditional music and dance, including some activities (10)_____ performances of Ginang Drum and Saranai Flute or the traditional dance of Cham girls.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. organize | B. being held | C. hold | D. organized |
| 2. A. see | B. commemorate | C. watch | D. love |
| 3. A. However | B. Nevertheless | C. Moreover | D. Therefore |
| 4. A. fortune | B. happy | C. lucky | D. dream |
| 5. A. Therefore | B. However | C. Because | D. Although |
| 6. A. beautiful | B. charm | C. beautifully | D. Charming |
| 7. A. shout | B. ask | C. call | D. speak |
| 8. A. to | B. about | C. for | D. of |
| 9. A. take the place | B. take places | C. take part | D. take place |
| 10. A. like | B. so | C. such | D. like as |

VII. Combine the sentences to complete the sentences, using the words in brackets.

1. The building is very old. He lives there. **(where)**
.....
2. I will tell you something. You didn't know it before. **(which)**
.....
3. I'll never forget the day. I met you then. **(when)**
.....
4. It was cold. However, Tom still went swimming. **(although)**
.....
5. John is very sad. He fails the final exam. **(because)**
.....
6. He never left the house. He had been born there. **(where)**
.....
7. I met the man. He works in a bank. **(who)**
.....
8. Here are the letters. They arrived this morning. **(which)**
.....
9. My grandfather is very old. He is still young at heart. **(although)**
.....
10. Tom gets a lot of money. He works hard. **(because)**
.....

VIII. Complete the sentences about Nha Trang Sea Festival, using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.

1. Nha Trang Sea Festival/ take place every two years/ a week in around June/ Nha Trang City, Khanh Hoa Province.

2. This/ is a colorful/ dynamic sea festival/ which honors natural beauty/ Nha Trang - the charming city overlooking the sea.

3. The first Nha Trang Sea Festival/ held in 2003 when Nha Trang Beach/ proclaimed as a member/ the Most Beautiful Bays/ the World Club.

4. Coming/ Nha Trang at the time of festival, visitors/ be able to take part/ various cultural/ recreational events.

5. First of all/ be an abundant opening ceremony/ Vietnamese and international art groups.

6. Besides, many interesting activities also/ take place during the festival/ seafood competition/ wine festival/ beach volleyball/ art kite flying festival/ underwater group wedding, etc.

7. The festival/ be also a great chance for tourists/ know more about Viet Nam/ special events.

8. Nha Trang Sea Festival/ definitely give you an unforgettable impression/ Viet Nam's charming beauty as/ as time-honored traditional values.

Unit 6

FOLK TALES

PART 1: vocabulary and GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

Word	Type	Pronunciation	Meaning
brave	(adj)	/breɪv/	dũng cảm, gan dạ
Buddha	(n)	/'bʊdə/	Bụt, Đức phật
cruel	(adj)	/'kru:əl/	độc ác
cunning	(adj)	/'kʌnɪŋ/	xảo quyệt, gian xảo
dragon	(n)	/'dræɡən/	con rồng
emperor	(n)	/'empərə(r)/	hoàng đế
evil	(adj)	/'i:vl/	xấu xa về mặt đạo đức
fable	(n)	/'feɪbl/	truyện ngụ ngôn
fairy	(n)	/'feəri/	tiên, nàng tiên
fairy tale	(n)	/'feəri teɪl/	truyện thần tiên, truyện thần kì
fierce	(adj)	/fɪəs/	hung dữ, dữ tợn
folk tale	(n)	/fəʊk teɪl/	truyện dân gian
fox	(n)	/fɒks/	con cáo
generous	(adj)	/'dʒenərəs/	hào phóng, rộng rãi
giant	(n)	/'dʒaɪənt/	người khổng lồ
hare	(n)	/heə(r)/	con thỏ
knight	(n)	/naɪt/	hiệp sĩ
legend	(n)	/'ledʒənd/	truyền thuyết

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. Past simple

1. Form:

Positive:	S + V-ed / 2
Negative:	S + didn't + V (bare-inf)
Questions:	Did (not) + S + V(bare-inf)...?
	-> Yes, S + <i>did</i> . / No, S + <i>didn't</i> .

2. Use:

Thì quá khứ thường được dùng để chỉ sự vật, hiện tượng đã xảy ra và đã kết thúc tại một thời điểm cụ thể trong quá khứ.

3. Example:

*Last year I **worked** at the cinema, **studied** for my degree and **wrote** a column for the local newspaper.*

II. Past continuous:

1. Form:

Positive: S + was / were + V-ing

Negative: S + wasn't / weren't + V-ing

Questions: Was / Were (not) + S + V-ing ...?

-> *Yes, S + was/ were. / No, S + wasn't/ weren't.*

2. Use:

Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn được dùng để chỉ sự vật, hiện tượng đã xảy ra ở một thời điểm cụ thể trong quá khứ hoặc một khoảng thời gian không xác định trong quá khứ.

Example:

- *It happened at five in the afternoon **while** he **was watching** the news on TV.*

- *He **was doing** his homework in his bedroom **when** the burglar came into the house*

PART 2 : EXERCISE

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>sch</u> ool | B. <u>arch</u> itect | C. <u>ch</u> ange | D. <u>ch</u> emical |
| 2. A. buffal <u>o</u> | B. min <u>or</u> ity | C. g <u>o</u> ld | D. cl <u>o</u> se |
| 3. A. <u>e</u> nd | B. <u>p</u> encil | C. o <u>p</u> en | D. <u>b</u> ench |
| 4. A. want <u>e</u> d | B. wash <u>e</u> d | C. watch <u>e</u> d | D. stop <u>p</u> ed |
| 5. A. r <u>e</u> mote | B. <u>e</u> xplore | C. r <u>e</u> lax | D. di <u>v</u> erse |

II. Choose the words that have the different stress from the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. A. reflect | B. fable | C. spindle | D. legend |
| 2. A. ancestor | B. origin | C. stepmother | D. continue |
| 3. A. capture | B. granny | C. command | D. swallow |
| 4. A. rescue | B. religion | C. servant | D. tortoise |
| 5. A. emperor | B. woodcutter | C. announce | D. suddenly |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR**I. Choose the correct answers.**

1. Alice **saw/ was seeing** the accident when she was catching the bus.
2. What **were you doing/ did you do** when I called?
3. I **didn't visit/ weren't visiting** my friends last summer holiday.
4. It **rained/ was raining** heavily last July.
5. While people were talking to each other, he **read/ was reading** his book.
6. My sister **was eating/ ate** hamburgers every weekend last month.
7. While we **were running/ run** in the park, Mary fell over.
8. **Did you find/ Were you finding** your keys yesterday?
9. Who **was she dancing/ did she dance** with at the party last night?
10. They **were watching/ watched** football on TV all day.

II. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

1. My dad doesn't mind my mom from work every day.
A. pick up B. picked up C. picking up D. picks up
2. Using computers too much may have harmful effects your minds and bodies.
A. on B. to C. with D. onto
3. I love the people in my village. They are so and hospitable.
A. friendly B. vast C. slow D. inconvenient
4. The people in the village are very friendly.
A. ethnic minority B. majorities
C. ethnic minorities D. ethnic cultures
5. Can you speak English My English is not good.
A. slow B. more slowly C. quickly D. more quickly
6. Viet Nam is multicultural country with 54 ethnic groups.
A. a B. an C. the D. A and C
7. Which ethnic groups have the largest population in Viet Nam?
A. Kinh B. Muong C. Tay D. Hmong
8. The Lao are one of many Thai- speaking peoples.
A. the B. a C. an D. A and C

III. Find the mistakes.

1. I was play football when she called me.
.....
2. Was you study Math at 5 p.m. yesterday?
.....
3. What was she do while her mother was making lunch?
.....
4. Where did you went last Sunday?
.....

5. They weren't sleep during the meeting last Monday.
.....
6. He got up early and have breakfast with his family yesterday morning.
.....
7. She didn't broke the flower vase. Tom did.
.....
8. Last week my friend and I go to the beach by bus.
.....
9. While I am listening to music, I heard the doorbell.
.....
10. Peter turn on the TV, but nothing happened.
.....

IV. Put the correct verb form of the past tenses.

In my last holiday, I went to Hawaii. When I **(go)** 1 to the beach for the first time, something wonderful happened. I **(swim)** 2 in the sea while my mother was sleeping in the sun. My brother was building a castle and my father **(drink)** 3 some water. Suddenly I **(see)** 4 a boy on the beach. His eyes were blue like the water in the sea and his hair **(be)** 5 beautiful black. He was very tall and thin and his face was brown. My heart **(beat)** 6 fast. I **(ask)** 7 him for his name with a shy voice. He **(tell)** 8 me that his name was John. **He (stay)** 9 with me the whole afternoon. In the evening, we met again. We ate pizza in a restaurant. The following days we **(have)** 10 a lot of fun together. At the end of my holidays when I left Hawaii I said good-bye to John. We had tears in our eyes. He wrote to me a letter very soon and I answered him.

V. Put the verb in correct tense or form.

1. Trung's father **(teach)** him how **(ride)** a bicycle when he **(be)** twelve years old.
2. How your brother **(go)** to work everyday?
- He usually **(drive)**.
3. We **(go)** to Ha Long Bay this weekend.
4. You **(use)** to play so much when you **(live)** in the countryside?
5. Yesterday Hoang **(spend)** two hours **(repair)** his computer set.

VI. Write these sentences, putting one verb into the correct form of "used to" and the other into the past simple.

1. He **(live)** in London before he **(go)** abroad.
2. I **(earn)** a lot of money, but then I **(lose)** my job.
3. I'm surprised that they **(join)** the tennis club. They **(not/ like)** tennis.
4. you **(travel)** a lot before you **(become)** a teacher?
5. That radio **(work)** before I **(drop)** it.

6. We **(see)** _____ them every week, but then we **(have)** _____ an argument.
7. She **(play)** _____ tennis a lot before she **(break)** _____ her leg.
8. She **(drive)** _____ a lot before she **(have)** _____ an accident.
9. We **(have)** _____ a garden, but then we **(move)** _____ to a different house.

C. READING

I. Fill the gaps with the words/ phrases in the box.

In addition	also	As I have noted
In my opinion	Besides	I think

MY FAVORITE LEISURE ACTIVITY IS LISTENING TO MUSIC

(1) _____, listening to music not only helps me relax but also provides me with musical knowledge. I (2) _____ like the time that I can lie lazily in bed, put on the small earphone with my iPod and enjoy any favorite songs of many kinds of music: pop, hip-hop, rock or jazz. I like pop music very much because I think it is gentle and suitable for teenagers. I listen to rock music when I am sad and after that I feel cheerful and happy.

(3) _____ music from other countries is also good for teenagers to understand other cultures. (4) _____ that, the lyrics are easy to understand and interesting. (5) _____, it can improve my English and listening skills. (6) _____, music is an important part of my life and it helps me love my life more.

II. Read the following passage, and answer the questions below.

Duong Lam Village is located in Duong Lam Commune at a 45km distance from Hanoi. It is the birthplace of two kings in the history of Vietnam, Phung Hung and Ngo Quyen, who opened up the long-term self-control and independence period of Vietnam after Bach Dang Victory in the year 938.

All houses, gates, village gates and wells are built of laterite creating an architectural complex, a unique village that is typical for villages in the midlands in the North of Vietnam.

At present, there are still nearly old 200 houses and many other historical monuments such as Phung Hung Temple, Ngo Quyen Royal Tomb, MongPhu Communal House, Ho Gam Hill at which Phung Hung liked tigers to rescue villagers and the temple at which the diplomat Giang Van Minh is worshiped.

1. Where is Duong Lam village?

2. Who were the two kings whose birthplace is Duong Lam Village?

3. What is Duong Lam typical for?

4. How many old houses are there in Duong Lam?

III. Complete the first part of the story Cinderella. Use the verbs from the box in the Past Simple Tense.

<i>sleep</i>	<i>love</i>	<i>wash</i>	<i>see</i>	<i>say (x2)</i>	<i>be (x2)</i>	<i>iron</i>
<i>have (x2)</i>	<i>run</i>	<i>scrub</i>	<i>tear</i>	<i>live</i>	<i>come</i>	

Once upon a time, there (1) _____ a pretty young girl named Cinderella. She (2) _____ with her mean stepmother and two jealous stepsisters. Poor Cinderella (3) _____ to do all of the cooking and cleaning. She (4) _____ in a dusty attic and (5) _____ nothing to wear but old clothes. But no matter how mean her stepmother and stepsisters (6) _____, Cinderella was always cheerful. Even the animals (7) _____ to be near her. One day a letter (8) _____, inviting everyone to the King's palace for a ball.

Cinderella's stepmother (9) _____, "Cinderella, you may go, but only if you finish your work."

Cinderella (10) _____, (11) _____ and (12) _____ floors all day. Meanwhile, Cinderella's little friends made her a lovely gown. When Cinderella's stepsisters (13) _____ the gown, they (14) _____ it to pieces. "That's my ribbon!" cried one.

"And those are my beads!" the other shouted. Cinderella (15) _____ to the garden in tears. "Now I can't go to the ball," she cried.

"Don't cry, my child," (16) _____ a gentle voice.

"I am your fairy godmother, and I have come to help you."

D. WRITING**I. Use the words and phrases to complete the story.****THE STORY OF A TOWN**

- Brighton is/ largest seaside resort/ the south-east of England.

- At first the town/ be a fishing village and/ not become popular until about 1800.

- Rich people/ begin to visit Brighton in large numbers/ when King George IV/ decided/ build a house there, it/ become very fashionable.

- The King/ continue to visit it until 1827, but Queen Victoria/ not like the house.

- It is open/ the public every day/ there is a special exhibition there/ the summer.

- Brighton/ offers all kinds/ entertainment, from concerts/ plays in the theatre to local attractions like the Aquarium.

7. The area/ old houses known/ The Lanes is/ very attractive shopping centre,/ visitors can buy souvenirs/ antiques.

8. The houses/ were once lived in by fishermen/ but have now been converted into shops.

9. Not far/ The Lanes is a modern shopping centre/ licensed restaurants and tables outdoors/ you can enjoy/ drink in good weather.

10. Brighton is within easy reach/ London and has been/ popular day out for Londoners/ many years.

II. Connect each pair of sentences, using the conjunction or conjunctive adverb given in brackets.

1. The weather in India is rather hot all year round. You shouldn't wear shorts or sleeveless shirts when visiting a pagoda. **(but)**

2. Lim Festival is the festival of "Quan Ho" singing. It is also space for various folk games. **(moreover)**

3. People believe that the first person who visits their home during Tet holiday may determine their fortune for the whole year. The person who sweeps the floor on the first three days of this festive occasion might sweep away the wealth. **(however)**

4. Lion dances are held when opening a new company, or connecting an activity. These dances are believed to bring good luck and prosperity and drive away evil. **(because)**

5. You come and visit a Chinese family. You should bear in mind not to give an odd number of presents. Odd numbers are considered unlucky in China. **(if; because)**

III. Rewrite the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one.

1. Tea is cheaper than coffee.

- > Coffee

2. I adore listening to music every day.

-> I enjoy

3. The red car is more expensive than the black one.

-> The black car

4. No one in my group is more intelligent than Mary.

-> Mary

5. Son Tung M-TP performs the song “Chung ta khong thuoc ve nhau” very beautifully.

-> The song “Chung ta khong thuoc ve nhau”

6. A fish swims faster than a duck.

-> A duck

7. My house is bigger than your house.

-> Your house

8. I moved to Ha Noi five years ago.

-> I have

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>match</u> | B. <u>pan</u> | C. <u>transmit</u> | D. <u>safety</u> |
| 2. A. <u>equipment</u> | B. <u>upset</u> | C. <u>end</u> | D. <u>help</u> |
| 3. A. <u>folk</u> | B. <u>mother</u> | C. <u>photo</u> | D. <u>neighbor</u> |
| 4. A. <u>fairly</u> | B. <u>train</u> | C. <u>afraid</u> | D. <u>wait</u> |
| 5. A. <u>excited</u> | B. <u>prince</u> | C. <u>once</u> | D. <u>escape</u> |
| 6. A. <u>south</u> | B. <u>sound</u> | C. <u>mouth</u> | D. <u>touch</u> |
| 7. A. <u>nice</u> | B. <u>wife</u> | C. <u>children</u> | D. <u>knife</u> |
| 8. A. <u>fair</u> | B. <u>straight</u> | C. <u>awake</u> | D. <u>moderate</u> |
| 9. A. <u>tall</u> | B. <u>ball</u> | C. <u>call</u> | D. <u>adjective</u> |
| 10. A. <u>worked</u> | B. <u>looked</u> | C. <u>naked</u> | D. <u>cooked</u> |

II. Choose the word or phrase which best completes each sentence.

- You can use my bicycle _____ you bring it back tomorrow.
A. as long as B. although C. nevertheless D. in spite of
- My brother always _____ at cards. No wonder he won every game.
A. cheated B. lied C. tricked D. deceived
- He was so tired that he wasn't capable _____ driving himself home.
A. to B. for C. of D. from
- Fill in the form as indicated and return in the envelope _____.
A. provided B. offered C. prepared D. given

5. I wish you _____ to her why we couldn't go.
A. would explain B. to explain C. explained D. will explain
6. If we hurry, we might get there _____ to catch the early train.
A. right B. in time C. on time D. before time
7. Cut the cake into six _____ pieces.
A. same B. like C. alike D. equal
8. Our neighbors are very _____ on camping holidays.
A. eager B. enthusiastic C. interested D. keen
9. The mosquito bit and made my eyelid _____ and I couldn't open my eye properly.
A. swell B. grow C. stretch D. spread
10. I had to wear _____ uniform when I worked in the hotel.
A. a B. some C. any D. an
11. The doctor advised me not to take _____ so much work in future.
A. after B. on C. over D. to
12. If he phones, _____ him to buy some potatoes on the way home.
A. remember B. recall C. remind D. recollect
13. Who was the first person _____ the South Pole?
A. reaching B. who reaches C. to reach D. reached
14. The _____ of the murderer lasted six weeks
A. process B. trial C. charge D. conviction
15. A chicken can _____ up to three eggs a day.
A. lie B. lay C. put D. place
16. The nurse was on _____ in the hospital all night.
A. work B. alarm C. duty D. service
17. I suggest we _____ outside the cinema tomorrow at 8:30.
A. meeting B. meet C. met D. will meet
18. _____ playing professional basketball, she also enjoys tennis.
A. Besides B. Moreover C. Apart D. Together
19. She _____ him of lying to her.
A. threatened B. blamed C. criticized D. accused
20. Did Ms. Brown _____ the operator's manual from the library?
A. loan B. borrow C. lend D. send

III. Complete the following sentences with prepositions of time: *at, on, in* if necessary.

1. I don't like going out alone _____ night
2. I'm afraid I can't come to your birthday party _____ Sunday.
3. What do you usually do _____ the weekend?
4. Can you play football with us _____ next Sunday?
5. We went to bed late _____ last night.
6. They are leaving for Hue _____ next Friday.
7. Will you be at home _____ this evening?

8. I always feel relaxed _____ the evening.
9. We went to Nha Trang _____ last summer.
10. I won't be out so long. I'll be back _____ ten minutes.

IV. Read the following passage, answer/ complete the questions/ statements below it.

Once, there was a boy named Boly. He lived with his aged grandmother in Kanchi Village. His grandmother always woke up very early in the morning and made little buns and cakes. She sold them in the market place. With the money she earned, she sent Boly to school.

Boly was a good boy. He was an orphan. He loved his grandmother a lot. After school, he always went home quickly. Then, he would have his lunch and do his homework. In the evenings, Boly would go round the village selling the cakes his grandmother made. Boly and his grandmother lived quite happily.

One day, Boly's grandmother fell ill. She could not make any more cakes. Boly now had to look for work. He went from house to house doing odd jobs.

It was in one of these houses that a kind gentleman asked Boly why he was working at such a tender age. After listening to Boly's story, the man said that he wanted to adopt Boly. He was willing to take care of Boly's grandmother too. From then on, Boly and his grandmother led a very happy life.

1. The phrases of words "very old" is similar to the word in the text.
2. Boly was living with his grandmother because
.....
3. Boly's grandmother could afford to send him to school by
4. After school, Boly would immediately
5. Boly had to look for work because.....

V. Read the following passage and fill in the blanks with the correct words.

When a light passenger plane flew off course some time (1) _____, it crashed (2) _____ the mountains and its pilot was killed. (3) _____ only passengers, a young woman and her two baby daughters were unhurt. It was the (4) _____ of winter. Snow lay thick (5) _____ the ground. The woman knew that the nearest village was miles (6) _____. When it grew dark, she turned a suitcase (7) _____ a bed and put the children inside it, covering them (8) _____ all the clothes she could find. During the night, (9) _____ got terrible cold. The woman kept as near as she (10) _____ to the children and even tried to get into the case herself, but it was too small. Early the (11) _____ morning, she heard planes passing overhead and wondered how she could (12) _____ a signal. Then she had an idea. She stamped out the letters "SOS" in the snow. Fortunately, a pilot saw the signal and sent a message (13) _____ radio to nearest town. It was not (14) _____ before a helicopter arrived on the scene and (15) _____ the survivors of the plane crash.

VI. Read the following passage and complete the sentences.

In 1920, after some thirty - nine years of problems with disease, high costs, and politics, the Panama Canal was officially opened, finally linking the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans by allowing ships to pass through the fifty-mile canal Zone instead of traveling some seven thousand miles around Cape Horn. It takes a ship approximately eight hours to complete the trip through the canal

and costs an average of fifteen thousand dollars, one-tenth of what it would cost an average ship around the Horn. More than fifteen thousand ships pass through its locks each year.

The French initiated the project but sold their rights to the United States. The latter will control it until the end of the twentieth century when Panama takes over its duties.

1. "Initiated" is nearest in meaning to
2. The passage is about
3. On the average, it would cost \$150,000 to travel
4. The construction on the canal probably began
5. Despite all theinvolved, the project is beneficial.

VII. Read the following passage and fill in the blank spaces with the suitable words.

The first stamp in (1) _____ world was an English stamp. It was made (2) _____ 1840. Before that time people paid money to the postman (3) _____ every letter they received and the postman didn't give letters to anybody (4) _____ didn't pay him.

An English teacher (5) _____ name is Rowland Hill thought much about it. One day he said that people who wrote the letters must (6) _____ for them and not the (7) _____ who got the letters. He spoke (8) _____ it to people in the government.

Soon all the (9) _____ began to sell little pieces of paper (10) _____ a stamp on them.

VIII. Answer the following questions, using the suggested words or phrases in brackets.

Example: Where did the children go after the lesson? (the park)

They went to the park after the lessons.

1. When did you begin learning English? (three years ago)
=>
2. How many exercises did you do last night? (four exercises)
=>
3. What time did the man telephone his wife? (at two o'clock)
=>
4. How many years was Mr. Green in Viet Nam? (for ten years)
=>
5. What time did you get up this morning? (half past five)
=>
6. What did you have for breakfast this morning? (bread and omelets)
=>
7. What time did you leave home? (six o'clock)
=>
8. How did you go to school this morning? (by bicycle)
=>
9. What did you do after your homework last night? (watch television)
=>
10. What time did you go to bed last night? (at ten o'clock)
=>

IX. Complete the following sentences with prepositions of time: *at, on, in, before, after*.

1. I haven't seen Mai for a few days. I last saw her _____ Tuesday.
2. The price of petrol will go up _____ November.
3. I'll phone you _____ Tuesday morning _____ about 10 o'clock. Isn't it OK?
4. His father died _____ 2005.
5. Are you doing anything special _____ the weekend?
6. _____ Sunday afternoons I usually go for a walk.
7. Mr. Brown enjoys walking around his garden _____ night.
8. I woke up _____ five o'clock _____ the morning.
9. Mai's birthday is _____ April 10th.
10. My brother graduated from high school _____ June 2004.
11. Did you phone your teacher the day _____ yesterday?
12. My parents will get back from their holiday the day _____ tomorrow.

X. Rewrite the sentences, using "the past continuous" and "while" or "when".

1. We were having dinner and they were listening to the radio.
→ We were
2. She was sleeping and the fire started.
→ The fire
3. It began to rain and what were you doing?
→ What
4. The farmer started whistling and he was ploughing the field.
→ When
5. You came and what were they doing?
→ What
6. She came and what was happening?
→ What was
7. She was reading a book and the man came in.
→ The man
8. They were working in the field and the volcano erupted.
→ The volcano
9. The ship was leaving the harbor and the lava hit the town.
→ The lava
10. The headmaster was going to his car and someone hit him on the head.
→ Someone hit the headmaster

MIDDLE TERM TEST

A. PHONETICS

Choose the words that have the underlined part pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>s</u> ound | B. cl <u>ou</u> d | C. <u>fo</u> und | D. fav <u>ou</u> rite |
| 2. A. <u>to</u> ol | B. <u>no</u> on | C. <u>do</u> or | D. sch <u>oo</u> l |
| 3. A. kn <u>ow</u> | B. sh <u>ow</u> | C. <u>no</u> w | D. <u>lo</u> w |
| 4. A. craft <u>s</u> | B. comic <u>s</u> | C. street <u>s</u> | D. stamp <u>s</u> |
| 5. A. ment <u>io</u> n | B. quest <u>io</u> n | C. act <u>io</u> n | D. educat <u>io</u> n |
| 6. A. le <u>is</u> ure | B. ple <u>as</u> ure | C. ens <u>u</u> re | D. meas <u>u</u> re |
| 7. A. min <u>or</u> ity | B. ethn <u>i</u> c | C. tradit <u>io</u> n | D. relig <u>i</u> on |
| 8. A. recogn <u>is</u> ed | B. design <u>ed</u> | C. display <u>ed</u> | D. enter <u>ed</u> |
| 9. A. coun <u>tr</u> y | B. cl <u>ou</u> d | C. <u>lo</u> dly | D. m <u>ou</u> se |
| 10. A. cam <u>e</u> l | B. catt <u>l</u> e | C. padd <u>y</u> | D. buffal <u>o</u> |
| 11. A. populat <u>ed</u> | B. load <u>ed</u> | C. harvest <u>ed</u> | D. liv <u>ed</u> |
| 12. A. <u>no</u> rmal | B. visit <u>or</u> | C. transport <u>er</u> | D. ch <u>or</u> e |
| 13. A. nom <u>a</u> d | B. bad <u>l</u> y | C. <u>a</u> dore | D. lang <u>u</u> age |
| 14. A. behav <u>ed</u> | B. bor <u>ed</u> | C. hop <u>ed</u> | D. tri <u>ed</u> |
| 15. A. look <u>ed</u> | B. cook <u>ed</u> | C. nak <u>ed</u> | D. book <u>ed</u> |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose A, B, C, D for each gap in the following sentences.

- My mother enjoys _____ traditional food for our family, especially at Tet holiday.
A. cook B. to cook C. cooking D. cooked
- My father sometimes goes _____ in the forests. He'd like to find some more food for our family.
A. hunt B. hunting C. to hunt D. hunted
- Look! Some children are _____ the buffaloes.
A. picking B. herding C. driving D. playing
- The sky is _____ here in the countryside because there are no buildings to block the view.
A. tidy B. close C. dense D. vast
- Is living in the city _____ than living in the country?
A. more convenient B. as convenient
C. most convenient D. so convenient
- He is surprised _____ that there are 54 ethnic groups in our country.
A. to understand B. to study C. to know D. find
- The Viet (or Kinh) have _____ number of people, account for about 86% of the population.
A. large B. the large C. larger D. the largest
- _____ ethnic group has a larger population, the Tay or the Ede?
A. What B. Which C. Why D. Who

II. Use the gerund of the verbs in the box to complete the sentences.

play; listen; eat; do; collect; ride; take; wash; watch; write

1. My sister enjoys _____ aerobics in the morning.
2. Lucia fancies _____ emails after dinner.
3. In his free time, Quang likes _____ photographs.
4. Are you interested in _____ handball, Peter?
5. Vinh's brother loves _____ foreign coins, doesn't he?
6. David hates _____ a bike to school on rainy days.
7. I prefer _____ DVDs to going to cinema.
8. Nam detests _____ the dishes every day.
9. We don't mind _____ to classical music.
10. The Robinsons adore _____ Vietnamese food.

III. Put the verbs in the brackets into infinitive (V/to V) or gerund (V-ing).

1. John dislikes **(work)** _____ in front of a computer all day.
2. I'd like **(visit)** _____ the Viet Nam Museum of Ethnology this weekend
3. I'd rather **(make)** _____ crafts than listen to music.
4. Minh loves **(help)** _____ her parents with DIY projects.
5. Quang hates **(take)** _____ the dog for a walk.
6. We all adored **(do)** _____ aerobics when we were young.
7. You should **(play)** _____ sports to keep fit.
8. They don't need **(watch)** _____ that programme if they don't like it.
9. Do you fancy **(socialize)** _____ with friends?
10. My brother prefers **(surf)** _____ the Internet.

IV. Complete the sentences. Put the verbs into the correct form. Affirmative or negative.

1. I knew Sarah was very busy, so I _____ her. **(disturb)**
2. I was very tired, so I _____ to bed early. **(go)**
3. The bed was very uncomfortable. I _____ well. **(sleep)**
4. Sue wasn't hungry, so she _____ anything. **(eat)**
5. We went to Kate's house but she _____ at home. **(be)**
6. It was a funny situation but nobody _____. **(laugh)**
7. The window was open and a bird _____ into the room. **(fly)**
8. The hotel wasn't expensive. It _____ very much. **(cost)**
9. I was in a hurry, so I _____ time to phone you. **(have)**
10. It was hard carrying the bags. They _____ very heavy. **(be)**

V. Complete these sentences with "used to" or "didn't use to".

1. My father gave up smoking two years ago. He **(smoke)** _____ a packet of cigarettes a day.

2. There **(be)** _____ a movie theater here but it closed a long time ago.
3. Mr. An **(not/ drink)** _____ coffee when he was young but he likes it now.
4. Peter **(have)** _____ a motorbike, but last month he sold it and bought a car.
5. I **(not/ like)** _____ her but we are best friends now.
6. They came to live in the city last year. They **(live)** _____ in a small village in the country.
7. My sister **(play)** _____ tennis a lot but she doesn't play very often now.
8. When I was a child I **(not/ study)** _____ hard.

VI. Complete these sentences with the correct form of adjectives and adverbs comparison.

1. Mary is **(pretty)** as her sister.
.....
2. A new house is **(expensive)** than an old one.
.....
3. His job is **(important)** than mine.
.....
4. Of the four ties, I like the red one **(well)**.
.....
5. Nobody is **(happy)** than Miss Snow.
.....
6. Today English is the **(international)** of languages.
.....
7. John is much **(strong)** than I thought.
.....
8. Benches are **(comfortable)** than arm- chairs.
.....
9. Bill is **(good)** than you thought.
.....
10. Mr Bush is the **(delightful)** person I have ever known.
.....
11. Dick is the **(careful)** of the three workers.
.....
12. Is the book **(interesting)** than the one you read last week?
.....
13. Gold is **(precious)** than iron.
.....
14. The weather today is **(warm)** than the weather yesterday.
.....
15. This film is not **(good)** as the one we saw last week.
.....

16. Holidays are **(pleasant)** than working days.

.....

17. Which is **(high)** mountain in your country?

.....

18. A house is **(strong)** than a dog.

.....

19. Robert is **(fat)** than his brother.

.....

20. The Pacific is **(large)** ocean in the world.

.....

C. READING

I. Read the following passage then fill in each blank.

Dear Grandma and Grandpa,

Hi. I'm on holiday (1) Majorca with my friends, Tracy and Sharon. We arrived last Saturday. The first two days the weather wasn't very (2), so we did some sightseeing. We (3) lots of photographs. (4) Wednesday we hired a car and (5) out into the country. We (6) for lunch at a lovely little village and then in the (7) we found a beautiful beach. Last night, we went to (8) disco. We didn't (9) back till about 4 am, so we got up (10) this morning and we decided to have a relaxing day by the hotel swimming pool. So that's where I am now.

II. Read the following passage then answer the questions:

Gong culture in the Central Highlands of Viet Nam has been recognized by UNESCO as a Masterpiece of the Intangible Heritage of Humanity. Gong culture covers five provinces of the Central Highlands: Kon Tum, Gia Lai, Dak Lak, Dak Nong and Lam Dong. The masters of gong culture are the ethnic groups of Bahnar, Sedang, Mnong, Coho... The Gong Festival is held annually in the Central Highlands. In the festival, artists from these provinces give gong performances, highlighting the gong culture of their own province. For the ethnic groups of the Central Highlands, gongs are musical instruments of special power. It is believed that every Gong is the symbol of a god who grows more powerful as the Gong gets older. Therefore, gongs are associated with special occasions in people's lives, such as the building of new houses, funerals, crop praying ceremonies... The Gong sound is a way to communicate with the gods.

Answer the questions:

1. Where does Gong culture exist?

.....

2. How often is the Gong Festival held?

.....

3. What do artists do in the Gong Festival?

.....

4. Are Gongs pieces of folk music?

.....

5. Is the gong sound a way to communicate with the ancestors?

.....

III. Read the passages and write True for (T) of False for (F).**His early life**

George Washington was born in Virginia. His family owned a big farm and had George didn't have much education. During his life he had three jobs: he was a farmer, a soldier, and a politician. He loved the life of a farmer. He grew tobacco and owned horses. He worked hard but he also liked dancing and going to the theatre. In 1759 he married a widow called Martha Custis. They were happy together, but didn't have any children.

His later life

He was Commander-in-Chief of the army and fought the British in the War of Independence. When the war ended in 1781 he was happy to go back to the farm, but his country wanted him to be President. Finally, in 1789, he became President, and gave his name to the new capital city. He started the building of the White House, but he never lived in it. By 1797 he was tired of politics. He went back to his farm and died there two years later.

1. _____ He came from a rich family.
2. _____ He loved being a politician.
3. _____ He worked hard.
4. _____ He had a lot of other interests.
5. _____ He had a good education.
6. _____ He married, but didn't have any children.
7. _____ He was in office for eight years.
8. _____ He was happy to live and work on the farm.
9. _____ Finally he was tired of politics and resigned.
10. _____ Americans loved him very much.

IV. Read the passage and complete the sentences below.

A horse on board the Enterprise was perhaps the first and only horse ever to save the lives of its shipmates. The Enterprise was sailing for North Carolina. She carried a mixed cargo, and there were fifteen passengers on her. She was making good time until at dawn, she struck something. Water poured into the ship. The holds were soon flooded. Frightened men and women climbed the rigging to save their lives. The crew tried to pump the holds out, but with no luck. Then the cargo caught fire. All those on board thought they would die.

The captain knew the coast was near. But how near? Perhaps if the horse could reach land, the people could, too. The horse was led to the side and pushed over. The horse did reach land. In fact, it almost waded ashore! The people soon followed. All were saved, thanks to a nameless horse.

1. There were people on the Enterprise.
2. The ship was wrecked at
3. When water poured in, the crew tried to the holds.
4. The horse was pushed overboard in the hope that it could
5. The horse got ashore almost by

V. Read the passage then answer the questions.

The Youth and Young Pioneers Organization was founded in Vietnam on March 26th, 1931. It builds character, and encourages good citizenship and personal fitness.

The Y & Y has many plans to help the community. It encourages all members to take part in different programs.

The recycling program can help people save natural resources. The “Rosy Smile” program helps raise fund for the poor children. The “Green Sunday” program makes the city more beautiful with clean streets, plenty of trees and flowers. It gives more green color to the city and it is done on Sunday so it has the name “Green Sunday”.

There are some more helpful programs such as “helping the elderly and street children”, “supporting cultural-sport”, “young scientists”, etc....

1. When was the Y & Y founded?

.....

2. What does it build?

.....

3. What does it encourage?

.....

4. Why is it named “Green Sunday”?

.....

5. What does the recycling help?

.....

VI. Read the passage and fill a suitable word in each blank to complete its summary below.

Nasreddin’s Visitors

One day a visitor came to Nasreddin’s house. “I am your cousin from Konya,” he said, “and I have brought you a duck to celebrate the visit.” Nasreddin was delighted. He asked his wife to cook the duck, and served the visitor a fine dinner.

The next day another visitor arrived. “I am the friend of the man who brought you the duck,” he said. Nasreddin invited him in and gave him a good meal. The next day another visitor arrived, and said he was the friend of the friend of the man who had brought the duck. Again Nasreddin invited him in for a meat. However, he was getting annoyed. Visitors seemed to be using his house as a restaurant. Then another visitor came, and said he was the friend of the friend of the friend of the man who had brought the duck. Nasreddin invited him to eat dinner with him. His wife brought some soup to the table and the visitor tasted it. “What kind of soup is this?” asked the visitor. “It tastes just like warm water.” “Ah!” said Nasreddin, “That is the soup of the soup of the soup of the duck.”

One day, Nasreddin had a (1) who claimed to be his (2) from Konya. The visitor brought a (3) as a gift, and Nasreddin’s (4) made some (5) with it, and served a fine meal.

Then another visitor arrived, saying he was a (6) of the cousin; then a third, who said he was a friend of the friend of the cousin. They didn’t bring any (7), but Nasreddin gave them a meal anyway. However, when the (8) visitor arrived, Nasreddin became angry. Instead of soup, he served (9) water. He told the friend of the friend of the friend of the cousin that it was soup of the soup of the soup of the (10).

D. WRITING

I. Read the text, correct the underlined verbs if they are wrong. Some verbs are correct.

I remember a trip I once **(1) made** to my grandmother's house. She **(2) would live** about 30 kilometres away from us and we **(3) used to going** there quite often with our mother. On this occasion we **(4) set off** to my grandmother's after school on a cold winter's day. When we were about to leave we **(5) were noticing** that some snow was beginning to fall, and as we **(6) were driving** along we **(7) were realizing** that it **(8) moved** more and more heavily. Suddenly we had to brake hard as the car in front stopped suddenly. We **(9) were skidding** and **(10) went off** the road into a ditch! It was pretty scary, but we were lucky and none of us were hurt....

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

II. Complete each sentence so it means the same as the sentence above.

1. Cats cannot swim as well as dogs.
→ Dogs can swim
2. Minh really loves to hang out with friends.
→ Minh really enjoys
3. Playing beach games is very interesting.
→ It is
4. He uses all his free time to look after his garden.
→ He spends.....

III. Complete each sentence so it means the same as the sentence above. Use "Used to".

1. They once started these machines by hand.
→ They used to
2. He doesn't get up late anymore.
→ He
3. I don't listen to the radio any more.
→ I used to
4. They don't have a dog any more.
→ They used to
5. My brother doesn't serve in the army any longer.
→ My brother used to
6. Barbara is not as keen on travel as she used to be.
→ Barbara used to
7. When he was young, he usually did morning exercise in the park.
→ He used to
8. The man often spent his holiday in the mountain when he was young.
→ The man used to
9. Before he had the car, he went to work by bike.
→ Before he had the car, he used to
10. When I was young, I usually get up early.
→ I used to

Unit 7

POPULATION

PART 1: vocabulary and GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

Word	Type	Pronunciation	Meaning
affect	(v)	/ə'fekt/	ảnh hưởng, tác động
aquatic	(adj)	/ə'kwætɪk/	sống/ mọc ở nước
billboard	(n)	/'bɪlbɔ:d/	biển quảng cáo ngoài trời
blood pressure	(n)	/blʌd 'prefə(r)/	huyết áp
cause	(n, v)	/kɔ:z/	nguyên nhân, gây ra
cholera	(n)	/'kɒlərə/	bệnh tả
come up with	(v)	/kʌm ʌp wɪð/	nghĩ ra
contaminate	(v)	/kən'tæmɪneɪt/	làm bẩn
contaminant	(n)	/kən'tæmɪnənt/	chất gây ô nhiễm
dump	(v)	/dʌmp/	vứt, bỏ, đổ thành đống
earplug	(n)	/'iəplʌg/	cái bịt lỗ tai
effect	(n)	/ɪ'fekt/	kết quả
fine	(v)	/faɪn/	phạt tiền
float	(v)	/fləʊt/	nổi
groundwater	(n)	/'graʊndwɔ:tə(r)/	nước ngầm
hearing loss	(n)	/'hɪərɪŋ lɒs/	mất thính lực
illustrate	(v)	/'ɪləstreɪt/	minh họa
litter	(n, v)	/'lɪtə(r)/	rác vụn (mẩu giấy, vỏ lon...), vứt rác
measure	(v)	/'meʒə(r)/	đo
poison	(n, v)	/'pɔɪzn/	chất độc, làm nhiễm độc
pollutant	(n)	/pə'lju:tənt/	chất gây ô nhiễm
radioactive	(adj)	/'reɪdɪəʊ'æktɪv/	thuộc về phóng xạ
radiation	(n)	/'reɪdɪ'eɪʃn/	phóng xạ
untreated	(adj)	/'ʌn'tri:tɪd/	không được xử lý

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW**CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Câu điều kiện)****1. Các cách dùng cơ bản (Usage)****a. Loại 1: Diễn tả điều có thật ở hiện tại:**

- Câu điều kiện loại 1 còn có thể được gọi là câu điều kiện hiện tại có thể có thật. Ta sử dụng câu điều kiện loại 1 để đặt ra một điều kiện có thể thực hiện được trong hiện tại và nêu kết quả có thể xảy ra.

If + S + V (present simple), S + will + V (inf)

Note: V + + **or** + S + **will/won't** + V +

=> **Unless S + V + , S + will/ won't + V +**

=> **If S don't/ doesn't + V, S + will/ won't + V +**

Eg: Study hard *or* you will fail the exam.

=> *Unless you study hard, you will fail the exam.*

=> *If you don't study hard, you will fail the exam.*

Ghi chú: - Sau mệnh đề If hoặc mệnh đề Unless phải có dấu phẩy (,)

- Sau Unless không được dùng dạng phủ định

b. Loại 2: Điều kiện không có thật ở hiện tại:

- Câu điều kiện loại 2 diễn tả sự việc, hiện tượng không thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

If + S + V (past simple), S + would + V (inf)

*Note: **Động từ "to be" phải chia là were ở tất cả các ngôi**

Eg: - If I **were** rich, I **would travel** around the world.

- If I **had** money, I **would buy** the car.

c. Loại 3: Câu điều kiện loại 3 là câu điều kiện không có thực trong quá khứ.

Điều kiện không thể xảy ra trong quá khứ, chỉ mang tính ước muốn trong quá khứ, một giả thiết trái ngược với thực trạng ở quá khứ.

If + S + had + P.P (quá khứ phân từ), S + would + have + P.P

Eg: If I hadn't been absent yesterday, I would have met him. (Nếu hôm qua tôi không vắng mặt thì tôi đã gặp mặt anh ta rồi.)

PART 2 : EXERCISE**A. PHONETICS****I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the others.**

- | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>p</u> addy | B. <u>s</u> and | C. <u>t</u> ravel | D. <u>t</u> ribal |
| 2. A. bu <u>f</u> falo | B. pho <u>t</u> o | C. lime <u>s</u> tone | D. bo <u>t</u> anical |
| 3. A. <u>j</u> ungle | B. <u>l</u> uggage | C. <u>s</u> unbathe | D. <u>s</u> ugar |
| 4. A. <u>a</u> round | B. <u>v</u> arious | C. <u>s</u> ound | D. <u>m</u> ountains |
| 5. A. <u>h</u> eritage | B. <u>g</u> iant | C. <u>g</u> arden | D. <u>v</u> illage |

II. Choose the words that have the different stress from the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. definition | B. electricity | C. contaminate | D. radiation |
| 2. A. dramatic | B. overhead | C. century | D. groundwater |

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 3. A. thermal | B. beneath | C. rubbish | D. earplug |
| 4. A. affect | B. billboard | C. visual | D. substance |
| 5. A. aquatic | B. behavior | C. pollution | D. permanent |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Correct the verbs form to complete the sentences.

- If you **(go)** _____ away, please write to me.
- If he **(eat)** _____ another cake, he will be sick.
- I **(not do)** _____ that if I **(be)** _____ you.
- If he **(take)** _____ my advice, everything can go well.
- He never does homework. If he **(do)** _____ his homework, he **(not worry)** _____ about his exam.
- What you **(do)** _____ if she refuses your invitation?
- If today **(be)** _____ Sunday, we **(go)** _____ to the beach.
- Unless they **(pass)** _____ their examinations, they would join the army.
- You **(be)** _____ ill if you drink that water.
- If Tom **(go)** _____ to bed earlier, he would not be so tired.
- If it's raining heavily, we **(not go)** _____ for a donkey ride.
- If he **(try)** _____ hard, he'll pass the examination.
- I could understand the French teacher if she **(speak)** _____ more slowly.
- If I **(finish)** _____ the work in time, I **(go)** _____ to the football game.
- If you **(see)** _____ Mary today, please **(ask)** _____ her to call me.

II. Complete the sentences with the correct verb form in the bracket.

- If someone offered to buy you one of those rings, which you **(choose)** _____?
- The flight may be cancelled if the fog **(get)** _____ thick.
- If the milkman **(come)** _____, tell him to leave two pints.
- I **(call)** _____ the office if I were you.
- Someone **(sit)** _____ on your glasses if you leave them there.
- You would hear my explanation if you **(not talk)** _____ so much.
- What you **(do)** _____ if you hear the burglar alarm?
- If you **(read)** _____ the instructions carefully, you wouldn't have answered the wrong question.
- If Mel **(ask)** _____ her teacher, he'd have answered her questions.
- I would repair the roof myself if I **(have)** _____ a long ladder.
- Unless they turn that radio off, I **(go)** _____ mad.
- If you were made redundant, what you **(do)** _____?
- We'll have a long way to walk if we **(run)** _____ out of petrol here.
- If you shake that bottle of port, it **(not be)** _____ fit to drink.
- If you spoke louder, your classmates **(understand)** _____ you.
- I'll probably get lost unless he **(come)** _____ with me.

17. You **(not have)** _____ so many accidents if you drove more slowly.
 18. If you **(wear)** _____ a false beard, nobody would have recognized you.
 19. If she **(leave)** _____ the fish here, the cat will eat it
 20. You **(have)** _____ no trouble at school if you had done your homework.

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

1. If I _____ the same problem you had as a child, I might not have succeed in life as well as you have.
 A. have B. would have C. had had D. should have
2. I _____ you sooner had someone told me you were in the hospital.
 A. would have visited B. visited C. had visited D. visit
3. _____ more help, I would call my neighbor.
 A. Needed B. Should I need C. I have needed D. I should need
4. _____ then what I know yesterday, I would have saved myself a lot of time and trouble over the years.
 A. Had I known B. Did I know C. If I know D. If I would know
5. Do you think there would be less conflict in the world if all people _____ the same language?
 A. spoke B. speak C. had spoken D. will speak
6. If you can give me one good reason for your acting like this, _____ this incident again.
 A. I will never mention B. I never mention
 C. will I never mention D. I don't mention
7. If I had known you were asleep, I _____ so much noise when I came in.
 A. didn't make B. wouldn't have made
 C. won't make D. don't make
8. Unless you _____ all of my questions, I can't do anything to help you.
 A. answered B. answer C. would answer D. are answering
9. Had you told me that this was going to happen, I _____ it.
 A. would have never believed B. don't believe
 C. hadn't believed D. can't believe
10. If Jake _____ to go on the trip, would you have gone?
 A. doesn't agree B. didn't agree C. hadn't agreed D. wouldn't agree
11. Jane: "John went to the hospital alone",
 Katy: "If _____, I would have gone with him".
 A. had he told me B. he had told me
 C. he has told me D. he would tell me
12. If you _____, I would have brought my friends over to your house yesterday to watch T.V, but I didn't want to bother you.
 A. had studied B. studied C. hadn't studied D. didn't study

13. Peter: "Did you need help with your Math last night?"
 Mary: "If I had needed, I _____ you".
 A. would call B. called C. would have called D. will call
14. If someone _____ into the store, smile and say, "May I help you?"
 A. comes B. came C. come D. should come
15. "Here's my phone number".
 "Thanks. I'll give you a call if I _____ some help tomorrow"
 A. will need B. need C. would need D. needed
16. If I didn't work for an accounting firm, I _____ in a bank now.
 A. work B. will work C. have worked D. would work
17. The death rate would decrease if hygienic conditions _____ improved.
 A. was B. is C. were D. had been
18. The education in Japan _____ if the basic principles of education had not been taken into consideration.
 A. would go down B. would have gone down
 C. went down D. had gone down
19. If there _____, the rice fields could have been more productive.
 A. had been enough water B. were enough water
 C. would be enough water D. are enough water
20. The patient will not recover unless he _____ an operation.
 A. had undergone B. would undergo
 C. undergoes D. was undergoing
21. If she _____ him, she would be very happy.
 A. would meet B. will meet C. met D. should meet
22. If he _____ a thorough knowledge of English, he could have applied for this post.
 A. had had B. had C. has D. has had
23. If I had enough money, I _____ abroad to improve my English.
 A. will go B. would go C. went D. should have go to
24. The bench would collapse if they _____ on it.
 A. stood B. stand C. standing D. stands
25. If it _____ convenient, let's go out for a drink tonight.
 A. be B. is C. was D. were

IV. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

- People believe that the _____ water has brought cancer to the local residents. **(pollute)**
- Light pollution make us _____ to see the stars in the sky. **(able)**
- Noise is considered as _____ pollution. **(environment)**
- _____ habitats have been destroyed in recent years. **(nature)**
- A number of cleaning products contain _____ chemicals. **(harm)**

6. Water samples collected at these villages were seriously _____ with bacteria. **(contaminate)**
7. An _____ of agrochemicals is pesticides. **(illustrate)**
8. Contaminants are usually _____ to aquatic plants. **(poison)**

V. Fill in each blank with the correct preposition.

1. Land pollution is responsible for damage done _____ natural habitat of animals.
2. Americans throw _____ twenty-eight and a half million tons of plastic in landfills every year.
3. Scientists have come up _____ new ways of saving energy.
4. Thousands of people were exposed _____ radiation when the nuclear plant exploded.
5. Waste water from many factories which is dumped _____ water bodies directly causes water pollution.

C. READING

I. Read the passage and fill in the blanks with the correct words.

Environmental pollution is a term that (1) _____ to all the way by which man pollutes his surroundings. Man dirties the air with gases and smoke, (2) _____ the water with chemicals and other substances, and damages the soil with (3) _____ many fertilizers and pesticides. Man also pollutes his surroundings (4) _____ various other ways for (5) _____, people run natural beauty by scattering litter on the land and in the water. They operate machines and motor vehicles that fill the air with disturbing (6) _____ pollution.

Environmental pollution (7) _____ one of the most serious (8) _____ feeling mankind today. Air, (9) _____ and soil are necessary to the survival of all living things. Badly - polluted air can cause illness, and (10) _____ death. Polluted water kills and other marine life. Pollution of soil reduces the amount of land for growing food. Environmental pollution also brings ugliness to man's naturally beautiful world.

II. Read the passage and complete the sentences. True (T) or false (F).

Air pollution is a serious problem in many cities. Motor vehicles, factories and other sources create so much air pollution that it may hang in the air like dirty fog. Air pollution threatens the health of the people who live in cities. City wastes cause water pollution when they are poured into the waterways. These wastes kill fish and make some areas unfit for swimming. In addition, many large cities have difficulties in disposing of their garbage. The amount of garbage grows each year, but places to put it are quickly filling up. Citizens, governments, industries, scientists, and business people must work together in different ways to gradually reduce pollution. For example, most cities have introduced recycling programmes.

- ☐ 1. Motor vehicles and factories are among some sources of air pollution.
- ☐ 2. Air pollution doesn't endanger people's health in some cities.
- ☐ 3. Air pollution is the only problem of the environment mentioned in this passage.
- ☐ 4. Garbage disposal is a problem in many large cities.
- ☐ 5. Everyone must cooperate to reduce pollution.
- ☐ 6. We can reduce pollution by recycling programmes only.

III. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Light pollution is not (1) _____ serious as water or air pollution. (2) _____, it is the type of pollution that (3) _____ more in cities than in rural areas. In the past, we could sit out at night and (4) _____ at glittering stars in the sky and light from objects in the outer space. Nowadays, cities are covered with lights from buildings, streets, advertising displays, many of which direct the lights up into the sky and into many unwanted places. The real problem is that it is very (5) _____ to apply light to almost everything at night. Millions of tons of oil and coal (6) _____ to produce the power to light the sky. Eye strain, (7) _____ of vision and stress are what people may get from light pollution. (8) _____ light at night can harm our eyes and also harm the hormones that help us to see things properly.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. as | B. more | C. much | D. only |
| 2. A. Moreover | B. However | C. Therefore | D. Nevertheless |
| 3. A. happen | B. occur | C. occurs | D. is occurred |
| 4. A. watch | B. see | C. spend | D. gaze |
| 5. A. waste | B. wasteful | C. wasting | D. wastes |
| 6. A. used | B. using | C. is used | D. are used |
| 7. A. lose | B. lost | C. loss | D. losing |
| 8. A. Very much | B. Too much | C. Too many | D. So many |

D. WRITING**I. Write a paragraph about noise pollution (definition, causes, effects, and solutions), using the cues given.**

1. Noise pollution/ any loud sounds/ either harmful or annoying/ humans and animals.

2. Generally/ noise/ produced/ household appliances/ big trucks/ vehicles and motorbikes/ on the road/ planes and helicopters flying over cities/ loud speakers, etc.

3. Noise pollution/ cause/ stress/ illness/ hearing loss/ sleep loss/ lost productivity.

4. Health effects/ noise/ include/ anxiety/ stress/ headaches/ irritability/ nervousness.

5. Noise-producing industries/ airports/ bus terminals/ should/ located/ far/ living places.

6. The officials/ check/ misuse/ loudspeakers/ outdoor parties and discos/ as well as/ public announcement systems.

III. Combine the two sentences to complete the sentences.

1. The building is very old. He lives there. **(where)**
.....
2. I will tell you something. You didn't know it before. **(which)**
.....
3. I'll never forget the day. I met you then. **(when)**
.....
4. It was cold. However, Tom still went swimming. **(although)**
.....
5. John is very sad. He fails the final exam. **(because)**
.....
6. He never left the house. He had been born there. **(where)**
.....
7. I met the man. He works in a bank. **(who)**
.....
8. Here are the letters. They arrived this morning. **(which)**
.....
9. My grandfather is very old. He is still young at heart. **(although)**
.....
10. Tom gets a lot of money. He works hard. **(because)**
.....

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF**I. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.**

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. A. linguistic | B. classical | C. phonetic | D. romantic |
| 2. A. fantastic | B. historic | C. comic | D. symbolic |
| 3. A. oceanic | B. specific | C. ceramic | D. aquatic |
| 4. A. terrific | B. Arabic | C. statistic | D. cosmetic |
| 5. A. arithmetic | B. geographic | C. energetic | D. economic |

II. Complete the sentences with the correct verb form in the bracket.

1. If we meet at 9:30, we **(have)** _____ plenty of time.
2. If you **(find)** _____ a pen in the cellar, don't mention it to anyone.
3. The zookeeper would have punished her with a fine if she **(feed)** _____ the animals.
4. If you pass your examination, we **(have)** _____ a celebration.
5. Lisa would find the milk if she **(look)** _____ for it in the fridge.
6. What **(happen)** _____ if I press this button?
7. The door will be unlocked if you **(press)** _____ the green button.
8. I should have voted for her if I **(have)** _____ a vote then.

9. If you go to Paris, where you **(stay)** _____?
10. If you **(swim)** _____ in this lake, you'll shiver from cold.
11. Unless you **(tell)** _____ the truth, I won't help you.
12. You'll get pneumonia if you **(not change)** _____ your wet clothes.
13. If I had known that you couldn't eat octopus, I **(not buy)** _____ it.
14. If they **(hang)** _____ that picture lower, people would be able to see it.
15. She **(be)** _____ able to walk faster if she didn't have such high-heel shoes.
16. I **(bring)** _____ you some beer if I had known that you were thirsty.
17. If you had touched that electric cable, you **(be)** _____ electrocuted.
18. If the story hadn't been true, the newspaper **(not print)** _____ it.
19. I **(not buy)** _____ things on the installment system if I were you.
20. Dan **(arrive)** _____ safe if he drove slowly.

III. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. Light pollution make us _____ to see the stars in the sky. **(able)**
2. Noise is considered as _____ pollution. (environment)
3. The soil becomes _____ because of the use of so many pesticides and fertilizers. (contaminate)
4. _____ waste spills can contaminate groundwater. (industry)
5. _____ habitats have been destroyed in recent years. (nature)
6. A number of cleaning products contain _____ chemicals. (harm)
7. Water samples collected at these villages were seriously _____ with bacteria. (contaminate)
8. People believe that the _____ water has brought cancer to the local residents. (pollute)
9. In many developing countries, water pollution is usually a leading cause of _____. (die)
10. _____ elements have been found in both ground and underground water sources. (pollute)
11. Fish and many other animals are killed by _____ in their habitat. (pollute)
12. Astronomers are concerned about light pollution because they have _____ in viewing activities in the sky and outer space. (difficult)

IV. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Have a walk (1) _____ a beach, listen to the sound of the sea waves, and suddenly you see a lot of rubbish on the beach. Pollution takes away all the (2) _____ of our beaches. I feel really annoyed (3) _____ I see plastic bags lying on the sand, cigarette ends buried in the sand, and soda cans floating in the sea.

There are a lot of things that we can do. (4) _____ we see rubbish, we should do our part in the protecting the land (5) _____ picking it up and throwing it in dust bins. (6) _____, we can form some kind of organization that helps (7) _____ the beaches. If everyone does their part, the beaches will be a wonderful and beautiful place. We need to start now (8) _____ the beaches are damaged beyond repair.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|--------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. on | B. in | C. at | D. over |
| 2. A. beauty | B. beautifully | C. beautiful | D. being beautiful |
| 3. A. before | B. after | C. when | D. while |
| 4. A. While | B. Soon | C. Unless | D. If |
| 5. A. by | B. with | C. of | D. in |
| 6. A. Nevertheless | B. Moreover | C. However | D. Therefore |
| 7. A. cleaning up | B. cleaning up | C. clean up | D. clean off |
| 8. A. when | B. after | C. until | D. before |

V. Read the following passage and then answer the questions below it.

Air pollution is a cause of ill-health in human beings. In a lot of countries there are laws limiting the amount of smoke which factories can produce. Although there isn't enough information on the effects of smoke in the atmosphere, doctors have proved that air pollution causes lung diseases.

The gases from the exhausts of cars have also increased air pollution in most cities. The lead in petrol produces a poisonous gas which often collects in busy streets surrounded by high buildings. Children who live in areas where there is a lot of lead in the atmosphere cannot think as quickly as other children and they are clumsy when they use their hands.

There are other long-term effects of pollution. If the gases in the atmosphere continue to increase, the earth's climate may become warmer. A lot of the ice near the Poles may melt and may cause serious floods.

1. What can make people sick?

2. Where does smoke come from?

3. Can air pollution cause lung diseases?

4. What else can cause air pollution in cities?

5. Why does the earth's climate become warmer?

VI. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Saving the Environment: One Home at a Time

Pollution can be seen not only throughout the world, but also in our own homes. It comes from household chemicals, the amount of water people use and the waste people produce and throw away. What can be done to stop this pollution? Surprisingly, a person can help save the environment by doing simple things.

First, we need to recycle, which allows products to be used over and over again. Recycling can also reduce the number of trees cut down to produce paper products. **It** takes very little effort. It is not hard to place plastic and glass bottles, aluminum cans and paper in a bin. Anyone can do it.

4. Industrial waste water/ be directly discharged/ canals, lakes, ponds,/ rivers, causing serious pollution/ surface water.

5. For example,/ 2008, Vedan factory, a sodium glutamate plant, released their untreated industrial wastewater/ the Thi Vai River/ caused tons/ fish and ducks in the river/ die.

6. Another cause/ water pollution in Vietnam/ be the lack/ awareness among citizens.

7. Every day people/ generate a/ of garbage,/ they throw it directly into canals, river,/ ponds.

8. They/ collect water from these sources/ do their laundry, wash dishes, and bathe,/ then they/ throw the dirty water that contain detergent/ shampoo directly into them.

Unit 8

ENGLISH SPEAKING COUNTRIES

PART 1: vocabulary and GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

Word	Type	Pronunciation	Meaning
aborigines	(n)	/ˌæbəˈrɪdʒənɪz/	thổ dân
absolutely	(adv)	/ˈæbsəluːtli/	tuyệt đối, chắc chắn
accent	(n)	/ˈæksent/ / ˈæksent/	giọng điệu
awesome	(adj)	/ˈɔːsəm/	tuyệt vời
cattle station	(n)	/ˈkætl ˈsteɪʃn/	trại gia súc
ghost	(n)	/ɡəʊst/	ma
haunt	(v)	/haʊnt/	ám ảnh
icon	(n)	/ˈaɪkɒn/	biểu tượng
kangaroo	(n)	/ˌkæŋɡəˈruː/	chuột túi
koala	(n)	/kəʊˈɑːlə/	gấu túi
kilt	(n)	/kɪlt/	váy ca-rô của đàn ông Scotland
legend	(n)	/ˈledʒənd/	huyền thoại
loch	(n)	/lɒk/	hồ (phương ngữ ở Scotland)
official	(adj)	/əˈfɪʃl/	chính thống/ chính thức
parade	(n)	/pəˈreɪd/	cuộc diễu hành
puzzle	(n)	/ˈpʌzl/	trò chơi đố
schedule	(n)	/ˈfedʒuːl/ / ˈskedʒuːl/	lịch trình, thời gian biểu
Scots/ Scottish	(n)	/skɒts/ / ˈskɒtɪʃ/	người Scotland
state	(n)	/steɪt/	bang
unique	(adj)	/juˈniːk/	độc đáo, riêng biệt

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. Present simple tense

Form: Positive: S + V (He/ She/ It + Vs/ Ves/ Vies)

- Spelling

General rule: In the third person singular we add -s to the infinitive.

Exceptions: When the verb ends in -ss, -sh, -ch, -z, -o, we add -es

miss – misses	wash – washes	catch – catches
buzz – buzzes	go – goes	

When the verb ends in consonant +y, we change the -y to **-ies**

hurry/ hurries	marry/ marries
----------------	----------------

Negative: S + don't/ doesn't + V (infinitive)

Note: *don't = do not/ doesn't = does not*

Questions: Do/ Does + S + V (infinitive)?

Short answers: - Yes, S + **do/ does**. - No, S + **don't/ doesn't**.

Note: *In negatives and questions we use the infinitive forms of the verb.*

She doesn't like wine. NOT ~~She doesn't likes wine.~~

Does he play football? NOT ~~Does he plays football?~~

Use: We use present simple tense to:

- Describe regular events.

Ex: *I get up at seven o'clock (everyday).*

- Describe regular truths and states.

Ex: *The Earth goes around the Sun.*

- Describe future events; something considered as a fact, an agreement or a plan

Ex: *Tet holiday this year lasts up to 9 days.*

II. Present continuous tense

(+) S + am/ is/ are + V-ing

(-) S + am/ is/ are + not + V-ing

(?) Am/ Is/ Are + S + V-ing?

➔ Yes, S + am/ is/ are.

➔ No, S + am/ is/ are + not.

Usage

+ To talk about the temporary situations:

Ex: My cousin **is living** in America at the moment.

Adverbs of time are often used: at the moment; currently; now; this week/ month/ year

+ To talk about actions happening at the moment of speaking

Ex: I **am waiting** for my friends.

+ To talk about trends or changing situations

Ex: The internet **is making** it easier for people to stay in touch with each other.

III. Present perfect tense

+ Talk about an action that happened at an unspecified time in the past. We don't state when it happened.

+ Talk about an action that has just or already happened. (The results related to present or in the future)

Adverbs of time are often used: just; already; for; since; ever; never; not .. yet.

Ex: *I've collected plenty of information.*

PART 2: EXERCISE

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. v <u>a</u> nilla | B. v <u>a</u> cuum | C. <u>a</u> dd | D. f <u>a</u> csimile |
| 2. A. whi <u>t</u> en | B. fi <u>b</u> er | C. zi <u>p</u> per | D. conve <u>y</u> or |
| 3. A. rem <u>o</u> ve | B. wro <u>t</u> e | C. m <u>o</u> ld | D. c <u>o</u> coa |
| 4. A. follo <u>w</u> | B. po <u>w</u> der | C. sho <u>w</u> | D. borro <u>w</u> |
| 5. A. woo <u>d</u> | B. thousan <u>d</u> | C. proced <u>u</u> re | D. hair <u>d</u> ryer |

II. Choose the words that have the different stress from the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. iconic | B. monument | C. territory | D. difficulty |
| 2. A. Singapore | B. Philippines | C. Canada | D. India |
| 3. A. native | B. perhaps | C. whisky | D. accent |
| 4. A. official | B. excursion | C. Thanksgiving | D. spectacle |
| 5. A. festive | B. Arctic | C. unique | D. speaker |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose the right word in brackets to fill in the blank.

- Last night I watched the movie Romeo and Juliet. At last they killed _____ (together/ each other/ themselves/ them).
- (What/ Do/ Would/ Will) _____ you like to come? – I'd love to.
- We must be there _____ (at/ before/ between/ after) 7.30 and 8.15.
- When my grandmother was young, she used _____ (sing/ to sing/ sang/ sung) very well.
- Don't go _____ (outside/ inside/ into/ away). It's too cold.
- Our team played well _____ (too/ that/ so/ enough) to win the gold medal.
- Don't let your child _____ (play/ to play/ playing/ plays) with matches.
- How long will he _____ (must/ should/ have to/ has to) stay there?
- Our team won the game because we played very _____ (good/ well).
- I tried on the shoes and they fitted me _____ (perfect/ perfectly).
- He had an accident because he was driving too _____ (fast/ fastly).
- Tom is a _____ driver (careful/ carefully). He is driving _____ along the narrow road. (careful/ carefully)
- Do you usually feel _____ (nervous/ nervously) before examination?
- She speaks English _____ (fluent/fluently).
- He hurt himself _____ (bad/badly).
- He looked me _____ when I interrupted him. (angry/ angrily)
- I always feel _____ when the sun is shining. (happy/ happily)
- Lan worked very _____ for the exam. (hard/ hardly)
- I am not _____ at Math. (good/ well)

20. My aunt speaks English very _____ (**good/ well/ goodly/ best**).
21. We have math on Tuesday, Thursday and Friday; it means we have math _____ (**once/ twice/ three times/ four times**) a week.
22. Lan promises to _____ (**try/ make/ work/ learn**) her best in learning English.

II. Do the quiz and choose the correct answers.

- Another name for Wales is _____.
A. Saxon B. Celtic C. Cymru D. Galle
- You can see _____ on the Canadian national flag.
A. the maple leaf B. the red leaf C. the rose D. the oak tree
- In 1893, _____ became the first country in the world to give all women the right to vote.
A. Canada B. New Zealand C. America D. Singapore
- _____ has a unique culture with traditions such as bagpipes, kilts and highland dancing.
A. England B. Wales C. Scotland D. Northern Ireland
- The name "Australia" comes from the Latin word "australis", meaning _____.
A. northern B. southern C. eastern D. western
- The tallest mountain the US is Mt McKinley, located in the state of _____. It reaches 20,320 feet (6,194 m) above the sea level.
A. Alaska B. California C. Florida D. Washington
- The Lord of the Rings movies were filmed in _____.
A. England B. Australia C. Canada D. New Zealand
- Scotland only shares a border with _____.
A. Wales B. Northern Ireland C. England D. Britain
- The name Canada comes from the word "kanata" which means "settlement" or "_____" in the language of the St Lawrence Iroquoians.
A. country B. village C. town D. nation
- The world's largest reef system, the Great Barrier Reef, is found off the north-eastern coast of _____.
A. Canada B. America C. New Zealand D. Australia

III. Complete the sentences with the appropriate present tense of the verbs in brackets.

- Each of the 50 states _____ an official state flower so far. (**adopt**)
- Since 1965, the maples tree with the leaves _____ the most well-known Canadian symbol. (**become**)
- At present, the National Cherry Blossom Festival _____ in Washington, D.C. to celebrate spring's arrival. (**occur**)
- Maori _____ recognized as an official language of New Zealand since the Maori Language Act of 1987. (**be**)
- Canada _____ made up of 10 provinces and 3 territories. (**be**)
- Australia _____ a range of different landscapes, including urban areas, mountain ranges, desert and rain forests. (**have**)

7. Annually, the National Eisteddfod festival of Wales _____ place for eight days at the start of August. **(take)**
8. The Statue of Liberty _____ over 12 million immigrants entering the USA through New York Harbor since 1900. **(welcome)**

C. READING

I. Read the passage and then answer the questions.

THE CAMEL

The camel can go without water for a long time. Some people think it stores water in its hump. This is not true. It stores food in its hump. The camel's body changes the food into fat. Then it stores the fat in its hump. It cannot store the fat all over its body. Fat all over an animal's body keeps the animal warm. Camels live in the desert. They do not want to be warm during the day.

The desert is very hot. The camel gets hotter and hotter during the day. It stores this heat in its body because the nights are cool.

The Arabian camel has one hump. The Bactrian camel of Central Asia has two humps. It also has long, thick hair because the winters are cold in Central Asia.

There is a lot of sand in the dessert. The camel has long eyelashes. Then sand cannot go into the camel's eyes.

Arabic has about 150 words to describe a camel. Arabs need all these words because the camel is very important to them.

Questions

1. Where do camels live?
.....
2. What does a camel store in its hump?
.....
3. The camel doesn't store fat all over its body. Why?
.....
.....
4. Why does it store heat during the day?
.....
5. Why does a Bactrian camel have long thick hair?
.....

II. Read the passage and fill in the blanks with the suitable words.

The English language is the most widely spoken language in the world. It is used as either first or second language (1) many countries.

During the 16th century, only about two million people spoke English. All (2) them lived in what is now the United Kingdom. Over the centuries, as a result of various historical events, English has spread throughout (3) world. Today, about 400 million people speak English as their native (4). Most of them live in Australia, Canada, the United Kingdom, Ireland, New Zealand, South Africa, (5) the Unites States.

About 100 million people, chiefly living in Bangladesh, India, Pakistan and in many African (6), speak English in addition to their own language. An additional 200 million

people in the world probably know (7) least some English. English is really an international language.

III. Read the following passage and then answer the questions below it.

In the world today there are 5,000 to 6,000 living languages, of which English is the most widely used. As a mother tongue, it ranks second only to Chinese, which is little used outside China.

English is the most international of languages. It is used as the language of aviation, international sport and pop music. Sixty percent of the world's radio stations broadcast in English, and more than half of the world's scientific papers are printed in English.

It is true that a great number of people are involved in the use of English. To people in Africa, Asia, and South America, English is an important foreign language to master. In most countries in the world, the English language is used as the language of business, commerce, and technology. English is now an effective medium of international communication. However, it is the written English which is not systematically phonetic, that causes difficulties to non-native speakers.

1. Which language is used as the language of aviation, international sport and pop music?

2. Why is English an important foreign language used in many countries?

3. What difficulties may learners of English be confronted with? Why?

4. Name three countries in which English is spoken as a first language.

5. As a mother tongue, why does English rank second only to Chinese?

D. WRITING

I. Reorder the words to make the sentences.

1. is/ but/ not/ Canberra/ the/, / is/ Australia/ capital/ of/ Sydney.

.....

2. Maori/ native/ of/ New Zealand/ people/ the/ are/ the/ Island/ in/ North.

.....

3. Washington D.C./ opens/ Museum/ a.m./ at Children's/ in/ 10.00/ National/ The.

.....

4. monument/ San Francisco/ Bridge/ of/ The/ an/ iconic/ Gate/ is/ Golden.

.....

5. its/ years/ language/ for/ considered/ Malaysia/ as/ has/ official/ English.

.....

II. Fill in the blank in the following passage with ONE suitable word.

English is the (1) _____ language of the Philippines. English- medium education (2) _____ in the Philippines in 1901 after the arrival of some 540 US teachers. English was also chosen for newspapers and magazines, the media, and literary writing.

The latest results from a rent survey suggest that about 65 percent of the (3) _____ of the Philippines has the (4) _____ to understand spoken and (5) _____ English, with 48 percent stating that they can write standard English.

The economy is based on English, and successful workers and managers are fluent (6) _____ English. (7) _____, many schools know that their (8) _____ must be fluent in English to be successful.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. A. payee | B. Chinese | C. coffee | D. trainee |
| 2. A. jubilee | B. guarantee | C. Japanese | D. referee |
| 3. A. refugee | B. Taiwanese | C. absentee | D. committee |
| 4. A. Viennese | B. Maltese | C. Burmese | D. Chinese |
| 5. A. reindeer | B. volunteer | C. mountaineer | D. engineer |

II. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

- _____ Charlie Chaplin was born in London, England. (**legend**)
- In Canada, there are a lot of _____ from various countries. (**refuge**)
- Lake Wanaka is a _____ scenery in New Zealand. (**spectacle**)
- The Sydney Opera House is an _____ monument of Australia. (**icon**)
- The _____ originates in Ireland and its associated islands. (**Ireland**)
- The Canadians are native _____ of English. (**speak**)
- English is an _____ language of France. (**official**)
- Thuy _____ loves the koala in Australia. (**absolute**)
- The violation of that company was _____ yesterday. (**exposure**)
- Do storm water and the atmosphere bring non- point source _____? (**pollution**)

III. Complete the sentences with the appropriate present tense of the verbs in brackets.

- Since its beginning more than a century ago, the slouch hat _____ one of the most distinctive items of Australian clothing. (**become**)
- For over 130 years, Akubra hats _____ its legendary stories in Australia. (**make**)
- Aberdeen in Scotland _____ an important centre for the oil industry since the finding of oil in the North Sea. (**become**)
- Canada _____ the longest land border in the world with the United States. (**share**)
- Ireland _____ the Eurovision Song Contest seven times. (**win**)
- In Canada you should maintain eye contact while you _____ hands. (**shake**)
- In Canada, New Year's Day _____ a long tradition of celebration. (**have**)
- First names _____ used more frequently in Australia than in other countries. (**be**)
- Recently, many places in New Zealand _____ called with two names – one English, and one Maori. (**be**)

10. Maori people _____ the hongi – touching noses – to greet people they _____ safe and familiar with. (**use - feel**)

IV. Read the passage and answer the questions below.

ENGLISH IS CONFUSING

“Good evening, everybody!” said the teacher, Donna. “Where is everybody?” That was sort of a daily joke by Donna. Usually the class started with only two or three students present, and then filled up as the minutes went by. It was summertime. Summer school was only eight weeks long. Class attendance was always smaller than during fall and spring semesters.

“I don’t know, teacher. Maybe they late or no come,” said one student. “Maybe watching TV football tonight.”

“Is there a soccer game tonight? It seems like there’s a soccer game every night. Oh, well. Let’s get started, okay? We’re on page 36 in the workbook. Tonight we’re studying participles as adjectives. Students are always confused when they learn about the present and past participles, so we will practice this a lot. Tonight, we’re just going to practice the present participle.

“The present participle tells us what emotion or feeling the subject is causing. For example, ‘Grammar is boring’ means that the subject – grammar – causes an emotion of boredom. If we say, ‘The movie is interesting,’ we are saying that the movie causes a feeling of interest. If we say, ‘The roller coaster is exciting,’ we are saying that the roller coaster causes a feeling of excitement. Any questions so far? Am I confusing you? Is everyone confused?”

The classroom was quiet. Donna looked at blank faces. They were confused. She knew this would take a while. But eventually, the faster students would grasp it, and then they would help the slower students. By the end of the evening, most of the class would feel comfortable using the present participle.

Donna erased the board and put some new examples on it. She loved guiding her students through difficult topics like this one. She always felt a little bit thrilled when the look of understanding came to their faces.

1. What was Donna’s daily joke?
.....
2. How many students were usually present when class started?
.....
3. Which season was it?
.....
4. How long did summer school last?
.....
5. What was always smaller in the summer?
.....
6. What were some absent students doing, perhaps?
.....
7. What was tonight’s subject?
.....

V. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

London's Tower Bridge

London's Tower Bridge is one of the most famous (1) _____ in the world. The bridge, designed (2) _____ (by) the architect Horace Jones together with John Wolfe Barry, was finally completed in 1894. It (3) _____ 11,000 tons of steel to build the framework of the 265-meter-long bridge. Over time, the bridge has become one of London's most famous (4) _____.

(5) _____ photographs of the Tower Bridge is a favorite London tourist activity, but you can also go inside the bridge, (6) _____ you'll have a magnificent view over London from the walkway (7) _____ the two bridge towers.

In 2014, glass floors were installed in the walkways, giving visitors another, unusual view from the bridge. The long glass floors, more than 40 meters above the river, allow you to (8) _____ the traffic over the Tower Bridge from above. It is particularly (9) _____ to see the bridge (10) _____ and close below your feet.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. bridges | B. bridge | C. tower | D. towers |
| 2. A. or | B. and | C. as | D. but |
| 3. A. took | B. built | C. brought | D. gave |
| 4. A. landscapes | B. views | C. symbols | D. scenes |
| 5. A. To take | B. Take | C. To taking | D. Taking |
| 6. A. when | B. where | C. what | D. whose |
| 7. A. at | B. on | C. between | D. in |
| 8. A. consider | B. follow | C. record | D. watch |
| 9. A. fascinate | B. fascinating | C. fascinated | D. fascination |
| 10. A. opened | B. to open | C. open | D. be opened |

Unit 9

NATURAL DISASTERS

PART 1: vocabulary and GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

Word	Type	Pronunciation	Meaning
accommodation	(n)	/ə,kɒmə'deɪʃn/	chỗ ở
bury	(v)	/'beri/	chôn vùi, vùi lấp
collapse	(v)	/kə'læps/	đổ, sập, sụp, đổ sập
damage	(n)	/'dæmɪdʒ/	sự thiệt hại, sự hư hại
disaster	(n)	/dɪ'zɑːstə(r)/	tai họa, thảm họa
drought	(n)	/draʊt/	hạn hán
earthquake	(n)	/'ɜːθkweɪk/	trận động đất
erupt	(v)	/'ɪrʌpt/	phun (núi lửa)
eruption	(n)	/'ɪrʌpʃn/	sự phun (núi lửa)
evacuate	(v)	/'evækjueɪt/	sơ tán
forest fire	(n)	/'fɒrɪst 'faɪə(r)/	cháy rừng
homeless	(adj)	/'həʊmləs/	không có nhà cửa, vô gia cư
mudslide	(n)	/'mʌdslaɪd/	lũ bùn
put out	(v)	/pʊt ʌp/	dập tắt (lửa..)
rage	(v)	/reɪdʒ/	diễn ra ác liệt, hung dữ
rescue worker	(n)	/'reskjuː 'wɜːkə(r)/	nhân viên cứu hộ
scatter	(v)	/'skætə(r)/	tung, rải, rắc
shake	(v)	/ʃeɪk/	rung, lắc, làm rung
tornado	(n)	/tɔː'neɪdəʊ/	lốc xoáy
trap	(v)	/træp/	làm cho mắc kẹt
tsunami	(n)	/tsuː'nɑːmi/	sóng thần
typhoon	(n)	/taɪ'fuːn/	bão nhiệt đới
victim	(n)	/'vɪktɪm/	nạn nhân

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW**I. Passive voice (Câu bị động)**

TENSES	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
1. The simple present	S + V(-s/es)	S + am/ is/ are + Vpp
2. The present continuous	S + am/ is/ are + V-ing	S + am/ is/ are + being + Vpp
3. The present perfect	S + have/ has + Vpp	S + have/ has + been + Vpp
4. The present perfect continuous	S + have/ has + been + V-ing	S + have/ has + been + being + Vpp
5. The simple past	S + V ₂ / V-ed	S + was/were + Vpp
6. The past continuous	S + was/were + V-ing	S + was/were + being + Vpp
7. The past perfect	S + had + Vpp	S + had + been + Vpp
8. The past perfect continuous	S + had + been + V-ing	S + had + been + being + Vpp
9. The simple future	S + will/ shall + V	S + will/ shall + be + Vpp
10. The future continuous	S + will/ shall + be + V-ing	S + will/ shall + be + being + Vpp
11. The simple future perfect	S + will/ shall + have + Vpp	S + will/ shall + have + been + Vpp
12. The near future	S + be going to + V	S + be going to + be + Vpp
13. Modal verb (*)	S + Modal verb + V-bare Inf	S + Modal verb + be + Vpp

II. Past perfect tense. (Thì quá khứ hoàn thành)**A. Forms - Dạng thức****1. Affirmative - Dạng khẳng định****S + had + PII***Part participle PII - Quá khứ phân từ**Trợ động từ **had** dùng cho mọi chủ ngữ. Had được viết tắt thành 'd.**Ví dụ: When we arrived, she had left. (Khi chúng tôi đến, cô ấy đã đi.)***2. Negative - Dạng phủ định****S + had not + PII***Ví dụ: Karen had not finished making dinner by the time her husband came home. (Karen đã vẫn chưa nấu xong bữa tối khi chồng cô ấy về nhà.)***3. Interrogative - Dạng nghi vấn****Had + S + PII?***- Yes, S + had.**- No, S + had not.**Ví dụ: Had you studied English before you moved to New York? (Bạn đã học tiếng Anh trước khi chuyển đến New York chứ?)*

B. Uses - Cách dùng

1. Thì Quá khứ hoàn thành diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra trước một hành động hay một thời điểm khác trong quá khứ. Cách dùng này thường sử dụng các cách diễn đạt thời gian “before, after, by, by the time”.

Ví dụ:

She had left before we got home. (Cô ấy đã rời đi trước khi chúng tôi về đến nhà.)

She had left by 8 a.m. (Cô ấy đã rời đi trước 8 giờ sáng.)

2. Thì Quá khứ hoàn thành diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra và để lại kết quả hay dấu hiệu trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: They were happy because they had scored a goal. (Họ vui mừng vì họ đã ghi được một bàn thắng.)

3. Thì Quá khứ hoàn thành là dạng quá khứ của thì Hiện tại hoàn thành.

Ví dụ:

Thì HTHT: We aren't hungry. We have just eaten lunch. (Hiện tại chúng tôi không đói. Chúng tôi vừa mới ăn trưa.)

Thì QKHT: We weren't hungry. We had just eaten lunch. (Chúng tôi không đói. Chúng tôi đã ăn trưa trước đó rồi.)

C. Signals - Dấu hiệu nhận biết thì quá khứ hoàn thành

before (trước khi)

after (sau khi)

By the time (tính đến lúc)

By + time (in the past) (tính đến (một thời gian trong quá khứ))

forgot, realized, remembered (quên, nhận ra, nhớ (đã hoặc chưa làm gì))

PART 2 : EXERCISE**A. PHONETICS**

I. Choose the word which has the underlined part pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>twi</u> ce | B. fl <u>i</u> ght | C. pi <u>e</u> ce | D. m <u>i</u> nd |
| 2. A. ab <u>o</u> ut | B. ar <u>o</u> und | C. s <u>o</u> und | D. y <u>o</u> ung |
| 3. A. c <u>o</u> ver | B. <u>o</u> ven | C. c <u>o</u> ffee | D. c <u>o</u> mpany |
| 4. A. pl <u>a</u> tes | B. cak <u>e</u> s | C. mat <u>e</u> s | D. plac <u>e</u> s |
| 5. A. laugh <u>e</u> d | B. learn <u>e</u> d | C. chang <u>e</u> d | D. arriv <u>e</u> d |

II. Choose the words that have the different stress from the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A. relief | B. debris | C. typhoon | D. severe |
| 2. A. erupt | B. victim | C. forest | D. message |
| 3. A. volcano | B. tropical | C. government | D. property |
| 4. A. geography | B. evacuate | C. emergency | D. temporary |
| 5. A. scatter | B. earthquake | C. collapse | D. mudslide |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Find the one choice that best completes the sentence:

1. A table with four chairs is of the dining room.
A. in B. the middle C. in the middle D. about
2. You brush your teeth twice a day.
A. should B. can C. will D. have
3. Tim is a good student. He did very well in the first semester. His mother is him.
A. sorry for B. sad C. proud of D. displeased
4. The new hotel next year.
A. is opened B. will be opened C. is opening D. opens
5. Would you mind on the light?
A. turn B. to turn C. turned D. turning
6. - Where is the fridge? - It's the corner of the kitchen.
A. in B. at C. to D. above
7. Did the children enjoy when they were on holiday?
A. themselves B. themselves C. himself D. itself
8. Carmen didn't use to eat fish, but now she
A. used to B. do C. does D. doesn't
9. I never go to Australia. I to Australia yet.
A. went B. have been C. will go D. haven't been
10. I'm Let's do something. How about going to a movie?
A. boring B. bore C. bored D. being bored
11. I'm hungry. is for dinner this evening?
A. Why B. When C. How D. What
12. The old lady sat in a corner talking to
A. himself B. itself C. herself D. themselves
13. I swimming very much.
A. wait B. try C. enjoy D. finish
14. The teacher said, "Come at 8 o'clock".
→ The teacher told the students at 8 o'clock.
A. not to come B. to come C. coming D. came
15. Mary is watching a film. She really likes it. Mary is really
A. to interest B. interest C. interested D. interesting
16. to do homework today?
A. Have you B. Do you have C. Must you D. You must
17. She knows that he worked really this semester.
A. good B. hardly C. better D. hard
18. Stop, boys! It's near the streets.
A. dangerous for playing B. dangerously to play
C. dangerous to playing D. dangerous to play

19. It's possible to supplement one's by taking a part-time job.
 A. income B. earning C. gaining D. attainment
20. Do you mind if I switch on the radio? -
 A. No, thank B. Yes, go ahead C. No, not at all D. Yes, you can

II. Fill in the correct verb form.

1. They **(come)** back home after they **(finish)** their work.
2. She said that she **(meet)** Mr. Bean before.
3. Before he **(go)** to bed, he **(read)** a novel.
4. He told me he **(not/wear)** such kind of clothes before.
5. When I came to the stadium, the match **(start)**
6. After Nick **(do)** his homework, he **(go)** to bed last night.
7. Mai **(live)** in Hai Phong for five years before she **(move)** to Ha Noi three years ago.
8. Phong **(tell)** me yesterday that he **(learn)** French for a year.
9. Ms. Hong **(work)** at our school for twenty years before she **(retire)** last June.
10. By the time I **(get)** to Nick's house, his party **(already/ start)**
11. When we **(come)** back to our home village last month, it **(change)** so much.
12. I couldn't recognize my cousin because he **(grow)** a lot.
13. By the time the bus **(come)** this morning, Duong **(wait)** for it for half an hour.
14. Before she **(listen)** to music, she **(do)** homework.
15. Last night, Peter **(go)** to the supermarket before he **(go)** home.

C. READING

I. Choose the correct word A, B, C or D for each gap to complete the following passage.

More than a billion people all over the world are (1) _____ the threat of desert expansion, but few of them are aware that they themselves cause it and are also its (2) _____. People cut (3) _____ trees for fuel and farmland. Their herd eat (4) _____ the grass covering valley floors and hillsides. The climate and soil quality, therefore, are affected and forests are turned into (5) _____.

In some places, many people had to leave their homes when their wells became dry and sand buried their houses and crops. Therefore, government in nearby areas have had local people (6) _____ trees and banned burning firewood for fuel. Many techniques have been (7) _____. For example, in Iran, a thin covering of oil was poured on sandy areas to retain (8) _____ for planting trees, but this method may harm the environment. Other countries built long canals or pipelines (9) _____ water to desert areas.

Unless people find more (10) _____ methods, their homes and land will be lost. The last against the desert is continuing.

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. A. of | B. in | C. on | D. under |
| 2. A. victims | B. enemies | C. friends | D. effects |
| 3. A. off | B. back | C. down | D. in |
| 4. A. up | B. away | C. into | D. out |
| 5. A. blanks | B. deserts | C. spaces | D. bareness |
| 6. A. planting | B. plant | C. to plant | D. planted |
| 7. A. using | B. use | C. used | D. uses |
| 8. A. fertilizer | B. soil | C. earth | D. water |
| 9. A. to carry | B. take | C. fetch | D. bring |
| 10. A. great | B. effective | C. major | D. useful |

II. Read the following passage, choose the best answer for each question followed.

Since the world has become industrialized, there has been an increase in the number of animal species that have either become extinct or have neared extinction. Bengal tiger, for instance, which once roamed the jungles in vast number, now only about 2,300 and by the year 2025, their population is estimated to be down to zero. What is **alarming** about the **case** of the Bengal tiger is that this extinction will have been caused almost entirely by **poachers** who according to some sources, are not interested in material gain but in personal gratification. **This** is an example of the **callousness** that is part of what is causing the problem of extinction. Animals like Bengal tigers as well as other endangered species are a valuable part of the world's ecosystem. International laws protecting these animals must be enacted to ensure their survival and the survival of our planet.

Countries around the world have begun to deal with the problem in various ways. Some countries, in order to circumvent the problem, have allocated large amounts of land to animal reserves. They then charge admission to help **defray** the costs of maintaining the parks and they often must also depend on world organizations for support. With the money they get, they can invest in equipment, and patrols to protect the animals. Another solution that is an attempt to **stem the tide** of animal extinction is an international boycott of products made from endangered species. This seems fairly effective but it will not, by itself, prevent animals from being hunted and killed.

- What is the main topic of the passage?

A. the Bengal tiger	B. international boycotts
C. endangered species	D. problems with industrialization
- Which of the following is closest in meaning to the word **"alarming"** in paragraph 1?

A. dangerous	B. serious	C. gripping	D. distressing
--------------	------------	-------------	----------------
- Which of the following could best replace the word **"case"** as used in paragraph 1?

A. act	B. situation	C. contrast	D. trade
--------	--------------	-------------	----------
- The word **"poachers"** as used in paragraph 1 could be best replaced by which of the following?

A. illegal hunters	B. enterprising researchers
C. concerned scientists	D. trained hunters
- The word **"callousness"** in paragraph 1 could best be replaced by which of the following?

A. indirectness	B. independence	C. incompetence	D. insensitivity
-----------------	-----------------	-----------------	------------------
- The above passage is divided into two paragraphs in order to contrast

A. a problem and a solution	B. a statement and an illustration
C. a comparison and a contrast	D. specific and general information

7. What does the word **“this”** refer to in paragraph 1?
 - A. endangered species that are increasing
 - B. Bengal tigers that are decreasing
 - C. poachers who seek personal gratification
 - D. sources that may not be accurate
8. Which of the following could best replace the word **“allocated”** in paragraph 2?
 - A. set aside
 - B. combined
 - C. organized
 - D. taken off
9. The word **“defray”** in paragraph 2 is closest in meaning to which of the following?
 - A. lower
 - B. raise
 - C. make a payment on
 - D. make an investment toward
10. The author uses the phrase **“stem the tide”** in paragraph 2 to mean
 - A. touch
 - B. stop
 - C. tax
 - D. save
11. Which of the following best describes the author’s attitude?
 - A. forgiving
 - B. concerned
 - C. vindictive
 - D. surprised

III. Fill in each blank with ONE suitable word.

EL NINO AND LA NINA

The tropical Pacific Ocean (1) _____ a warming and cooling cycle. This cycle (2) _____ a completely natural event and usually (3) _____ every three to seven years.

When the waters become (4) _____, it is called El Nino, and when they become cooler it is called La Nina. During the cycle, the (5) _____ of the ocean can change by around 3⁰C between the warmest and coolest times.

(6) _____ of the South American coast have known about this (7) _____ event for hundreds of years. When it (8) _____, they see a huge fall in the numbers of fish caught. (9) _____ scientists are only just beginning to (10) _____ how the event affects Earth’s weather and climate.

D. WRITING

I. Rewrite the sentences

1. David had gone home before we arrived.
→ After
2. We had lunch then we took a look around the shops.
→ Before
3. The light had gone out before we got out of the office.
→ When
4. After she had explained everything clearly, we started our work.
→ By the time
5. My father had watered all the plants in the garden by the time my mother came home.
→ Before
.....

II. Correct the verb form of the sentences.

1. When I **(come)** there, they **(leave)**
2. When I **(get up)** this morning, my father **(leave)**
3. After the children **(finish)** their homework, they **(go)** to bed.
4. I **(do)** it before he **(come)**
5. I **(meet)** them after they **(divorce)** each other.
6. If I **(not buy)** this dress, I **(have)** money.

III. Change the following sentences into passive voice.

1. They can't make tea with cold water.
→
2. The chief engineer was instructing all the workers of the plant.
→
3. Somebody has taken some of my books away.
→
4. They will hold the meeting before May Day.
→
5. They have to repair the engine of the car.
→
6. The boys broke the window and took away some pictures.
→
7. People spend a lot of money on advertising everyday.
→
8. They may use this room for the classroom.
→
9. The teacher is going to tell a story.
→
10. Mary is cutting the cake with a sharp knife.
→
11. The children looked at the women with a red hat.
→
12. They have provided the victims with food and clothing.
→
13. The teacher explains the lesson.
→
14. Mrs Green is cooking the food in the kitchen.
→
15. The doctor examined the patients.
→
16. These boys made that noise.
→

17. People speak English all over the world.

→

18. He gave him back the money last Sunday.

→

19. I can't do these exercises quickly.

→

20. She had finished the report by noon.

→

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Circle the word marked A, B, C or D with a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. A. damage | B. collapse | C. erupt | D. affect |
| 2. A. permanent | B. eruption | C. pollution | D. disaster |
| 3. A. station | B. temperature | C. illustrate | D. volcano |
| 4. A. tsunami | B. thunderstorm | C. typhoon | D. tornado |
| 5. A. accommodation | B. evacuation | C. contribution | D. contamination |

II. Find the odd A, B, C or D.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. A. disaster | B. storm | C. tornado | D. thunderstorm |
| 2. A. drought | B. flood | C. mudslide | D. climate |
| 3. A. thunderstorm | B. pollutant | C. typhoon | D. tsunami |
| 4. A. damage | B. collapse | C. erupt | D. destroy |
| 5. A. groundwater | B. drink | C. fresh water | D. mineral water |

III. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each unfinished sentence below.

- The facsimile _____ by Alexander Bain in 1843.
A. is invented B. was invented C. invented D. has been invented
- First, fry the onions _____ add the potatoes.
A. than B. then C. after D. before
- He _____ a prize in the competition last week.
A. win B. won C. was won D. has win
- Who _____ the company?
A. goes B. walks C. jogs D. runs
- _____ is an instrument for making sounds louder.
A. Loudspeaker B. Recorder C. Facsimile D. Radio
- The doctor told me _____ more fresh fruit.
A. eat B. to eat C. eating D. ate
- Can you repair my bike?
A. adjust B. use C. fix D. A & B

8. Coffee was known in Europe _____ “Arabian wine”.
A. as B. like C. the same D. unlike
9. The information _____ for future use.
A. stores B. stored C. is stored D. are stored
10. I saw a _____ flying overhead.
A. train B. helicopter C. conveyor belt D. coach
11. This beautiful picture _____ by Mary.
A. is drawn B. is drew C. is draw D. is drawing
12. Don’t **touch** the paint! - It’s still wet.
A. put paint on something to change the color
B. take something
C. do a job with something
D. put your hand or finger on something
13. I warned him _____ too close to the fire.
A. didn’t go B. not going C. no going D. not to go
14. _____ is a pen that has a very small ball at the end.
A. Ball-point pen B. Fountain pen C. Pencil D. Crayon
15. Tobacco is taxed in most countries, **along with** alcohol.
A. in the same way as something B. but not something
C. for example D. including
16. James picked up the _____ and said “Hello!”
A. vacuum B. printer C. telephone D. fax machine
17. Children, please **behave**!
A. do and say the right things
B. do something
C. do what somebody tells you to do
D. move on your legs, but not run
18. We now toast bread _____ a toaster on the table.
A. by B. with C. from D. in
19. Which _____ shall I press to turn the radio on?
A. plug B. roll C. roller D. button
20. Don’t sit _____ the sun too long.
A. in B. on C. over D. among

IV. Read the text and then choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

Two of the most dangerous storms which affect America are hurricanes and tornadoes. They are very much feared by anyone who may live in the path of their destruction.

Every year homes are destroyed by their fury and often lives are lost. Most people who live near the coast are forced to evacuate their homes and to move to safer areas until the storm passes. Floods are caused along the coasts by both the heavy rain and a storm tide that is considerably

above normal water level. The high winds, coastal flooding and heavy rains associated with a hurricane cause enormous damage.

Hurricanes usually develop between July and October. Once they hit land they carry tremendous power with driving rain and wind.

Tornadoes are violent low - pressured storms. These storms occur most often during the summer months and are noticeable by their strong wind and lack of rain. The sky turns black as dust is sucked up into the air. Tornadoes are capable of lifting quite heavy objects from the ground. They can pick up trees and cars right into the air and even uplift heavier objects such as homes and railway cars.

Both hurricanes and tornadoes cause millions of dollars worth of damage to life and property every year. Today they can be predicted more easily than in the past, but they cannot be stopped or ignored.

1. What are two of the most dangerous storms which affect America?
 - A. Hurricanes and tornadoes.
 - B. Typhoons and thunderstorms.
 - C. Thunderstorms and hurricanes.
 - D. Hurricanes and typhoons.
2. At which part of the year do hurricanes usually develop?
 - A. July and August only.
 - B. All the year round.
 - C. From the seventh to the ninth month.
 - D. Between July and October.
3. What is the major similarity of both a hurricane and a tornado?
 - A. They cover only a small area.
 - B. They can cause great damage.
 - C. They are not accompanied by rain.
 - D. They have either wind or speed.
4. Which of the following is true of tornadoes and hurricanes?
 - A. They cannot be predicted with accuracy.
 - B. They are easier to control today than in the past.
 - C. They can be predicted today with greater accuracy.
 - D. They cannot be predicted today with greater accuracy.
5. Which of the following was not mentioned in the article?
 - A. The number of people killed each year by these storms.
 - B. The tremendous power killed each year by these storms.
 - C. The damage caused by hurricanes and tornadoes.
 - D. The time of year when they are most likely to strike.

V. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

El Nino is a weather phenomenon of the Pacific Ocean which is (1) _____ by an abnormal (2) _____ of water on the surface of the ocean. It has the (3) _____ to influence

global weather patterns as it brings drought to some continents and (4) _____ rain to others. It was first (5) _____ by fishermen coming from Spanish ports in the Pacific in the 17th century. It got its name (Spanish for “boy child”) because it usually takes (6) _____ near Christmas time. It can cause catastrophic (7) _____. The 1982 El Nino (8) _____ in 1,500 deaths, but it can be a lot worse than that. Sea animals, (9) _____ fish and birds, also die in large numbers. It is (10) _____ that sailors in the Pacific can smell the dead sea-life during El Nino.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. caused | B. happened | C. origin | D. done |
| 2. A. increase | B. warming | C. heater | D. extra |
| 3. A. proficiency | B. practice | C. power | D. performance |
| 4. A. heavy | B. shower | C. plenty | D. wet |
| 5. A. saw | B. time | C. caught | D. noticed |
| 6. A. away | B. place | C. part | D. care |
| 7. A. problem | B. difficulty | C. hurt | D. damage |
| 8. A. caused | B. led | C. resulted | D. gave |
| 9. A. including | B. holding | C. containing | D. involving |
| 10. A. mistaken | B. felt | C. told | D. said |

VI. Read the following passage and choose the best answers each of the questions.

Nylon was invented in the early 1930s by an American chemist, Julian Hill. Other scientists worked with his invention and finally on 27 October 1938, Nylon was **introduced** to the world. It was cheap and strong and immediately became successful, especially in the making of ladies' stocking.

Today, nylon is found in many things: carpets, ropes, seat belts, furniture, computers, and even spare parts of the human body. It has played an important part : in our lives for over 50 years.

- Julian Hill was a/ an _____.
A. chemist B. American C. inventor D. all are correct
- Nylon can be found in _____.
A. many things B. spare parts of the human body
C. furniture D. all are correct
- What does the word “**introduce**” in line 3 mean?
A. tell somebody your name
B. tell somebody the name of a person
C. bring something new into use for the 1st time
D. bring something somewhere
- Nylon _____.
A. was invented by Julian Hill B. was strong but expensive
C. was not very popular D. all are correct
- Which of the following is not true?
A. Nylon was used to make ladies' stocking.
B. At first, people didn't want to use Nylon.
C. Today, Nylon still plays an important part in our lives.
D. We can found Nylon in computers.

VII. Read the text and fill in the blanks with the suitable words.

successful effect communicative poisons
harmful with increasing major

WATER POLLUTION IN INDIA

Contamination of water from any external source that makes it (1) _____ to life is known as water pollution. (2) _____ the fast industrial development and modern civilization, the problem of water pollution is (3) _____ day by day. The (4) _____ sources of water pollution are domestic wastes, agricultural wastes, sewage disposal, industrial wastes, radioactive wastes and oil leakages.

All the India rivers, including the holy river Ganga, have become highly polluted today. However, the Ganga Action Plan to control its water from pollution has not been proved (5) _____. The (6) _____ of water pollution is widespread. It causes many severe water-borne diseases.

According to WHO, 21 per cent of all (7) _____ diseases in India are water borne diseases. Oil is the main pollutant of the sea water. Huge tankers often dump oil into the sea. This act of dumping (8) _____ kills sea plants and animals.

VIII. Use the words and phrases to complete the passage.

1. The large movement/ the earth under the water/ causes/ very large and powerful tsunami.
2. That tsunami/ was called the Asian Tsunami in/ most of the world. It/ was called the Boxing Day Tsunami/ England, Australia.
3. South Africa/ Canada because/ it happened/ the holiday/ they call Boxing Day.
4. The tsunami caused/ lot of damage to countries/ such/ the Philippines, Thailand, Indonesia/ Sri Lanka.
5. Waves/ high as 30 meters killed many people/ damaged or destroyed/ lot of buildings/ other property.
6. Over 225,000 people died/ they were/ not found after/ tsunami.
7. The waves travelled/ as far away/ South Africa (8,000 kilometers)/ as many as 8 people/ die because/ high water caused by the waves.
8. Because of how much damage/ was caused/ the number/ people the earthquake affected, over \$7 billion/ was donated/ help the survivors/ rebuild the areas damaged.

Unit
10

COMMUNICATION

PART 1: vocabulary and GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

Word	Type	Pronunciation	Meaning
body language	(n)	/'bɒdi 'læŋgwɪdʒ/	ngôn ngữ cơ thể, cử chỉ
communicate	(v)	/kə'mju:nɪkeɪt/	giao tiếp
communication breakdown	(n)	/kə,mju:nɪ'keɪfɪn 'breɪkdaʊn/	giao tiếp không thành công, không hiểu nhau, ngưng trệ giao tiếp
communication channel	(n)	/kə,mju:nɪ'keɪfɪn 'tʃænl/	kênh giao tiếp
cultural difference	(n)	/'kʌltʃərəl 'dɪfrəns/	khác biệt văn hoá
cyber world	(n)	/'saɪbə(r) wɜ:ld/	thế giới ảo, thế giới mạng
chat room	(n)	/tʃæt ru:m /	phòng chat (trên mạng)
face-to-face	(adj, ad)	/feɪs-tə- feɪs/	trực diện (trái nghĩa với trên mạng)
interact	(v)	/,ɪntər'ækt/	tương tác
landline phone	(n)	/'lændlaɪn fəʊn/	điện thoại bàn
language barrier	(n)	/'læŋgwɪdʒ 'bæriə(r)/	rào cản ngôn ngữ
message board	(n)	/'mesɪdʒ bɔ:d/	diễn đàn trên mạng
multimedia	(n)	/,mʌlti'mɪ:diə/	đa phương tiện
netiquette	(n)	/'netɪket/	phép lịch sự khi giao tiếp trên mạng
non-verbal language	(n)	/,nɒn 'vɜ:bl 'læŋgwɪdʒ/	ngôn ngữ không dùng lời nói

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. FUTURE CONTINUOUS (Tương lai tiếp diễn)

1. Form

Positive: S + *will be* + v - *ing*Negative: S + *will not be* + v - *ing*Question: *Will* + S + *be* + v - *ing*?-> Yes, S + *will*. /No, S + *won't*.

2. Use

Dùng thì tương lai tiếp diễn để diễn tả hành động, sự việc sẽ xảy ra ở một thời điểm cụ thể hoặc một khoảng thời gian trong tương lai hay một kế hoạch trong tương lai.

Examples:

- I **will be working** on the report all week.
- By the year 2020 it is estimated that over one billion people **will be learning** English.
- I **will be seeing** Peter at dinner.

II. VERB + To V (Infinitive)

To-V dùng sau những động từ: agree, aim, appear, arrange, ask, attempt, advise, beg, choose, claim, decide, demand, desire, expect, fail, guarantee, happen, help, hope, learn, know, manage, offer, plan, prepare, pretend, promise, prove, refuse, remind, remember, seem, tend, threaten, tell, order, understand, want, wish...

PART 2 : EXERCISE

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. met <u>a</u> | B. scat <u>t</u> er | C. pack <u>a</u> ge | D. mat <u>h</u> |
| 2. A. sm <u>e</u> ll | B. pr <u>e</u> ss | C. m <u>e</u> lt | D. r <u>e</u> fill |
| 3. A. th <u>o</u> se | B. cl <u>o</u> thes | C. sh <u>o</u> pping | D. envel <u>o</u> pe |
| 4. A. d <u>o</u> wn | B. thr <u>o</u> w | C. n <u>o</u> wadays | D. h <u>o</u> w |
| 5. A. plant <u>s</u> | B. field <u>s</u> | C. tree <u>s</u> | D. newspaper <u>s</u> |

II. Choose the words that have the different stress from the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. A. polite | B. penfriend | C. shorthand | D. breakdown |
| 2. A. multimedia | B. possibility | C. telepathy | D. interactive |
| 3. A. battery | B. conference | C. oversleep | D. barrier |
| 4. A. landline | B. touchscreen | C. cyber | D. replace |
| 5. A. visible | B. discussion | C. digital | D. separate |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Fill in the blank with one suitable word from the box.

<i>symbolize</i>	<i>Debris</i>	<i>collapsed</i>	<i>permanent</i>
<i>mudslide</i>	<i>spectacles</i>	<i>thermal</i>	<i>radioactive</i>

1. Linda wants to admire all the amazing _____ round the world.
2. The dam had almost _____ by the time the flood came.
3. Last week, twenty houses were swept away by the _____.
4. _____ was scattered across the river by the tornado this morning.
5. In the most serious case, noise pollution can cause _____ hearing loss.

6. Some aquatic animals must change their habitats due to _____ pollution.
7. _____ endangers living creatures and environment.
8. The Big Ben in London was chosen to _____ the United Kingdom.

II. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each unfinished sentence below.

1. Every few weeks new satellites _____ into orbit.
A. are put B. is put C. are putted D. is putted
2. You **ought to** give up smoking because it is harmful to your health.
A. should B. could C. may D. am going to
3. Try to _____ the amount of fat in your diet.
A. reuse B. refill C. reduce D. recycle
4. It is _____ to park in the center of Newtown.
A. impossible B. impossibility C. impossibilities D. impossibly
5. I am delighted _____ you passed your exam.
A. that B. to C. in order to D. so that
6. We will begin _____ a brief discussion of the problems.
A. from B. with C. at D. on
7. Tree leaves _____ to wrap things.
A. should used B. should been used
C. should be used D. should be use
8. _____ is a wonderful natural fertilizer.
A. Compost B. Plastic C. Envelope D. Garbage
9. Glass is broken up, melted and made into new _____.
A. silverware B. hardware C. ironware D. glassware
10. Is the rubbish _____ every day?
A. collect B. collecting C. collected D. be collected
11. In 1876, the telephone _____ first introduced by Bell and Watson.
A. was B. is C. has been D. had been
12. It's important _____ wildlife in the area.
A. to conserve B. conserving C. conservation D. conserve
13. Japan _____ 40% of its waste every year.
A. reuses B. recycles C. refill D. broken
14. We were delighted _____ your letter yesterday.
A. to get B. got C. getting D. get
15. Sooner or later a satellite _____ by a large piece of rubbish.
A. will destroy B. will destroyed
C. will be destroyed D. will been destroyed
16. Let's play tennis instead of _____ television.
A. watch B. watching C. watches D. to watch
17. Everything depends on what you mean _____ the word "free".
A. about B. for C. of D. by

18. We should use _____ bags instead of plastic bags.
 A. cloth B. clothe C. clothed D. clothing
19. Beer _____ for breakfast in England years ago.
 A. used be drunk B. used to be drunk
 C. used to drunk D. used to be drank
20. I _____ some rice on the floor of the chicken coop.
 A. raised B. grew C. threw away D. scattered

C. READING

I. Choose the word (A, B, C, or D) that best fits each of the blank spaces.

Dear Sir or Madam,

We are in Class B, Year 8 at Stonehouse School. Every year our class goes (1) _____ an adventure holiday. This year we would like (2) _____ your center. We are planning (3) _____ away for the first week in May, arriving on Friday 2 May. There will be 15 boys and 15 girls in our party, and two teachers. We are (4) _____ in sailing, rock climbing, canoeing, and map-reading. Can you send us information about your center?

We look forward (5) _____ from you.

Yours faithfully,

Class B

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. in | B. at | C. aver | D. on |
| 2. A. attend | B. attending | C. to attend | D. to attending |
| 3. A. go | B. to go | C. going | D. to going |
| 4. A. interested | B. interesting | C. bored | D. boring |
| 5. A. hear | B. to hear | C. hearing | D. to hearing |

II. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

TELEPATHY: MIND TO MIND COMMUNICATION

The (1) _____ “telepathy” has been derived from the words “tele” meaning “distance” and “pathy” meaning “feeling”. So telepathy actually means (2) _____ feelings through a distance. Telepathy is the communication (3) _____ two minds, (4) _____ over a distance, without the (5) _____ of the five known senses.

At some point of time or the other, we all have (6) _____ telepathy. Maybe you were thinking of someone you haven’t talked to for months and you suddenly get a call from them. Or (7) _____ two people are together, they might say the same thing at the same time. These are spontaneous mind-to-mind (8) _____ that tend to occur frequently between closely related individuals.

- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A. word | B. phrase | C. letter | D. signal |
| 2. A. holding | B. getting | C. bringing | D. carrying |
| 3. A. through | B. among | C. between | D. across |
| 4. A. separate | B. be separated | C. separating | D. separated |
| 5. A. using | B. use | c. take | D. taking |

- | | | | |
|-------------------|------------|---------------|-------------------|
| 6. A. experienced | B. brought | C. made | D. taken |
| 7. A. where | B. during | C. when | D. since |
| 8. A. ways | B. methods | C. techniques | D. communications |

III. Read the passage and fill in the blanks with the suitable words.

Most people think of computers as very modern inventions, products of our new technological. But actually the idea for a computer (1) _____ worked out over two centuries ago by a man (2) _____ Charles Babbage.

Babbage was born (3) _____ 1791 and grew up to be a brilliant mathematician. He drew up plans for several calculating machines (4) _____ he called “engines”. But despite the fact that he (5) _____ building some of these he never finished any of them. Over the years people have argued (6) _____ his machines would ever work. Recently, however, the Science Museum in London has finished building (7) _____ engine based on one of Babbages designs. (8) _____ has taken six years to complete and more (9) _____ four thousand parts have been specially made. Whether it works or not, the machine will be on show at a special exhibition in the Science Museum (10) _____ remind people of Babbages work.

D. WRITING

I. Complete each sentence so it means the same as the sentence above.

- He got in through the window. I saw him.
→ I saw
- She made herself sick. She had worked very hard.
→ She had worked so
- The traffic was bad. However, I arrived on time.
→ Though
- We were late. We missed the first act of the play.
→ We were so
- They're the birds. I fed them this morning.
→ They're the birds that
- I don't know many English words
→ I wish
- “Do you have many friends?”
→ She asked me
- We don't have a lot of money, so we don't buy a lot of new books.
→ If we
- Learning English is not easy.
→ It is
- “Would you like to come to my birthday party, Sarah?” asked John.
→ John invited

II. Complete the sentences, using the given words in the brackets.

1. The film was boring. She decided to go home early. (so... .that)
.....
2. It is a difficult question. All the students can't answer it. (such....that)
.....
3. Mr. Brown wants to use solar energy. Mr. Brown does not have enough money to buy necessary equipment. (but)
.....
4. Shakespeare died in 1616. He had written more than 37 plays before then. (by the time)
.....
5. Douglas fell off his bicycle last week. He has had to use crutches to walk. (since)
.....
6. I turned off the lights. After that, I left the room. (before)
.....
7. The other passengers will get on the bus soon. Then we'll leave. (as soon as)
.....
8. Susan sometimes feels nervous. Then she chews her nails. (whenever)
.....
9. The frying pan caught on fire. I was making dinner at that time. (while)
.....
10. I won't return my book to the library. I'll finish my research project first. (until)
.....

III. Use the words or phrases to complete the letter.

Dear Mary,

1. I / have / great time / here in England.
.....
2. I / be / here / three months / my university term / start / two months ago.
.....
3. I / live / dormitory / some foreign students.
.....
4. They / come / different parts / the world.
.....
5. They / be / very friendly and pleasant, / and / their English / much better / mine.
.....
6. I practice / speak English / them / every day.
.....
7. Now / make /good progress.
.....
8. My pronunciation / much better / and / I / understand / almost everything.
.....

9. I / hope / my English / considerably / improve / the end / course.

10. Write / me / soon.

Yours truly,

Mai Lan

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

- Helen cannot talk to John because his nickname is _____. (**visible**)
- High- speed Internet provides me with _____ videos. (**interact**)
- With telegraphy, the information will be sent _____. (**immediate**)
- She used signs to tell me _____ that we were late. (**direct**)
- Paul _____ and missed some phone calls yesterday morning. (**sleep**)
- The secretary put Thomas through the manager's landline _____. (**instant**)
- The mute usually communicate _____ with each other. (**non- verbal**)
- I think Janet is not _____ because of her unfriendliness. (**communicate**)

II. Choose the best one (A, B, C or D) to complete the sentence or replace the underlined word.

- A person who has drunk too much alcohol would _____.
A. stagger B. swagger C. tramp D. prowl
- It takes roughly 4,000 pounds of petals to make a single pound of rose oil.
A. as much as B. amazingly C. more or less D. relatively
- Six novels a year, you say? He's certainly a _____ writer.
A. fruitful B. fertile C. virile D. prolific
- The party's election _____ proved to be successful.
A. campaign B. movement C. struggle D. fight
- No one appreciated his work during his lifetime, but _____ it is clear that he is a great artist.
A. in the aftermath B. by the time
C. in retrospect D. in this eventuality
- His emotional problems _____ from the attitudes he encountered as a child, I think.
A. stem B. flourish C. root D. sprout
- Nations that live in concord are nations that live together in peace.
A. War B. harmony C. conformity D. happiness
- _____ receipt of your instructions, I immediately sent a telex message to Algeria.
A. On B. In C. With D. By

9. My passport _____ last month, so I will have to get a new one
A. elapsed B. expired C. ended D. terminated
10. I am never free on Tuesday evening as I have a _____ arrangement to go to the cinema with a friend.
A. long-standing B. long-lived C. long-range D. long-lasting
11. These suggestions are _____ to be accepted by the majority of members.
A. unlikely B. impossible C. undoubtedly D. inconceivable
12. _____ receipt of your instructions, I immediately sent a telex message to Algeria.
A. On B. In C. With D. By
13. What _____ the smoke and the noise, the party made me feel quite ill.
A. because of B. through C. owing to D. with
14. Enough money has been raised to _____ the hospital's survival.
A. ensure B. endow C. enable D. empower
15. The burglar's presence was betrayed by a _____ floorboard.
A. cracking B. crunching C. groaning D. creaking
16. Please _____ from smoking until the plane is airborne.
A. refrain B. exclude C. resist D. restrain
17. Owing to the fog, his flight from Tokyo was _____.
A. belated B. overdue C. unscheduled D. unpunctual
18. When we went to Egypt he knew _____ no Arabic, but within six months he had become extremely fluent.
A. entirely B. virtually C. barely D. scarcely
19. The old lady's savings were considerable as she had _____ a little money each week.
A. put by B. put in C. put apart D. put down
20. The police _____ a good deal of criticism over their handling of the demonstration.
A. came in for B. brought about C. went down with D. opened up

III. Read the passage and complete the sentences.

One of the main sources for the spreading of news and events through out the world is the newspaper. The purpose of newspaper is to inform the public of political, social, economic and entertainment happenings, among other things. Generally, there are three types of newspapers. Daily newspapers publish at least one edition every weekday. Most dailies also have a weekend edition. Daily newspapers often have sections for news, sports, arts, and entertainment, business, and classified advertising. Weekly newspapers print once a week and cover news of interest to readers in a smaller area than that of a daily paper. They focus on local happenings rather than national or international events. Special-interest newspapers may publish daily, weekly, monthly, or even less frequently. They generally disseminate news of interest to a particular group of readers of feature news about a specific topic.

Thanks to the development of Internet, we can now get access to electronic newspapers. To some extent, e-newspapers are cheap, up-to-date, and convenient for most readers in the world.

1. The purpose of newspapers is to
.....

2. There are three types of newspaper. They are
3. Daily newspapers often have sections for
4. Weekly newspapers focus on
5. Special-interest newspapers cover news of interest to
6. Electronic newspapers are

IV. Read the passage and answer the questions.

THE POSTAGE STAMP

Before the invention of the postage stamp, it was difficult to send a letter to another country. The sender paid for the letter to travel in his or her own country. Then the person in the other country paid for that part of the trip. If a letter crossed several countries, the problem was worse.

Rowland Hill, a British teacher, had the idea of the postage stamp with gum on the back. The British post office made the first stamps in 1840. They were the Penny Black and the Twopence Blue. A person bought a stamp and put it on a letter, the post office delivered the letter. When people received letters, they didn't have to pay anything. The letters was prepaid.

Postage stamps became popular in Great Britain immediately. Other countries started making their own postage stamps very quickly.

There were still problems with international mail. Some countries did not want accept letter with stamps from another countries. Finally, in 1874, a German organized the Universal Postal System. Each country in the UPS agreed to accept letter with prepaid postage from the other members. Today the offices of the U PS are in Switzerland. Almost every country in the world is a member of this organization. It takes care of any international mail problems.

Today post offices in every country sell beautiful stamps. Collecting stamps is one of the most popular hobbies in the world, and every stamp collector knows about the Penny Black and the Twopence Blue.

Questions

1. Why was it difficult to send a letter to another country before the invention of the postage stamp?
.....
.....
2. Why were the postage stamps popular?
.....
.....
3. How did other countries react with the postage stamps?
.....
4. What does the Universal Postal System do today?
.....

5. Why do stamp collectors know about the Penny Black?

.....

V. Reorder the words to make the sentences.

1. her/ is/ phone/ choosing/ tone/ for/ ringback/ a/ to/ Lan / set/ song.

.....

2. her/ She/ in/ kept/ order/ watch/ at/ late/ on/ to/ avoid/ being/ glancing.

.....

3. reading/ board/ at/ Nga/ be/ the/ 8.00/ will/ tomorrow/ message/ a.m.

.....

4. ages/ , / hasn't/ their/ has/ replied/ Peter/ yet/ received/ he/ but/ email/ for/ it.

.....

5. than/ Snail/ is/ much/ it/ mail/ email/ is / slower/ not/ because/ favoured.

.....

Unit
11

SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

PART 1: vocabulary and GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

Word	Type	Pronunciation	Meaning
archaeology	(n)	/ˌɑːkiˈɒlədʒi/	khảo cổ học
benefit	(n, v)	/ˈbenɪfɪt/	lợi ích, hưởng lợi
core	(v)	/kɔː(r)/	chứa lõi
discover	(v)	/dɪˈskʌvə(r)/	phát hiện ra
enormous	(adj)	/ɪˈnɔːməs/	to lớn
explore	(v)	/ɪkˈsplɔː(r)/	khám phá, nghiên cứu
field	(n)	/fiːld/	lĩnh vực
improve	(v)	/ɪmˈpruːv/	nâng cao, cải thiện
invent	(v)	/ɪnˈvent/	phát minh ra
light bulb	(n)	/laɪt bʌlb/	bóng đèn
patent	(n, v)	/ˈpætnt/	bằng sáng chế, được cấp bằng sáng chế
precise	(adj)	/priˈsaɪs/	chính xác
quality	(n)	/ˈkwɒləti/	chất lượng
role	(n)	/rəʊl/	vai trò
science	(n)	/ˈsaɪəns/	khoa học
solve	(v)	/sɒlv/	giải quyết
steam engine	(n)	/stiːm ˈendʒɪn/	đầu máy hơi nước
support	(n, v)	/səˈpɔːt/	ủng hộ

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. Future review

1. Simple future:

Positive: S + will + V (infinitive)

Negative: S + will not + V (infinitive)

Question: Will + S + V (infinitive)?

➔ Yes, S + will. / No, S + won't.

2. Continuous future:**Positive:** S + will be + V - ing**Negative:** S + will not be + V - ing**Question:** Will + S + be V - ing?

→ Yes, S + will / No, S + won't

II. Reported speech

1. Usage: Trong lời nói trực tiếp, chúng ta ghi lại chính xác những từ, ngữ của người nói dùng. Lời nói trực tiếp thường được thể hiện bởi: các dấu ngoặc kép “.....” - tức là lời nói đó được đặt trong dấu ngoặc.

Ex: 1. *He said, “I learnt English”.*2. *“I love you,” she said.***2. Những thay đổi trong lời nói Trực tiếp và Gián tiếp:****2.1 Đổi thì của câu:**

Thì của các động từ trong lời nói gián tiếp thay đổi theo một nguyên tắc chung là lùi thì về quá khứ:

Thì trong Lời nói trực tiếp	Thì trong Lời nói gián tiếp
- Hiện tại đơn	- Quá khứ đơn
- Hiện tại tiếp diễn	- Quá khứ tiếp diễn
- Hiện tại hoàn thành	- Quá khứ hoàn thành
- Hiện tại hoàn thành TD	- Quá khứ hoàn thành TD
- Quá khứ đơn	- Quá khứ hoàn thành
- Quá khứ hoàn thành	- Quá khứ hoàn thành (không đổi)
- Tương lai đơn	- Tương lai trong quá khứ
- Tương lai TD	- Tương lai TD trong quá khứ
- Is/am/are going to do	- Was/were going to do
- Can/may/must do	- Could/might/had to do

Examples:

He does	He did
He is doing	He was doing
He has done	He had done
He has been doing	He had been doing
He did	He had done
He was doing	He had been doing
He had done	He had done
He will do	He would do
He will be doing	He would be doing
He will have done	He would have done
He may do	He might do
He may be doing	He might be doing
He can do	He could do

He can have done

He could have done

He must do/have to do

He had to do

2.2 Các thay đổi khác:**a. Thay đổi Đại từ**

Các đại từ nhân xưng và đại số hữu khi chuyển từ lời nói trực tiếp sang lời nói tiếp thay đổi như bảng sau:

ĐẠI TỪ	CHỨC NĂNG	TRỰC TIẾP	GIÁN TIẾP
Đại từ nhân xưng	Chủ ngữ	I we you	he, she they they
	Tân ngữ	me us you	him, her them them
Đại từ sở hữu	Phẩm định	my our your	his, her their their
	Định danh	mine ours yours	his, her theirs theirs

Ngoài quy tắc chung về các thay đổi ở đại từ được nêu trên đây, người học cần chú ý đến các thay đổi khác liên quan đến vị trí tương đối của người đóng vai trò thuật lại trong các ví dụ sau đây:

Ex: **Jane, “Tom, you should listen to me.”**

+ Jane tự thuật lại lời của mình:

I told Tom that he should listen to me.

+ Người khác thuật lại lời nói của Jane

Jane told Tom that he should listen to her.

+ Người khác thuật lại cho Tom nghe:

Jane told you that you should listen to her.

+ Tom thuật lại lời nói của Jane

Jane told me that I should listen to her.

b. Các thay đổi ở trạng từ không gian và thời gian:

Trực tiếp	Gián tiếp
This	That
That	That
These	Those
Here	There
Now	Then
Today	That day
Ago	Before
Tomorrow	The next day / the following day
The day after tomorrow	In two days' time / two days after
Yesterday	The day before / the previous day
The day before yesterday	Two day before
Next week	The following week
Last week	The previous week / the week before
Last year	The previous year / the year before

Examples:

* **Trực tiếp:** She said: "I saw the school-boy *here* in *this* room *today*."

Gián tiếp: She said that she had seen the school-boy *there* in *that* room *that* day.

* **Trực tiếp:** She said: "I will read *these* letters *now*!"

Gián tiếp: She said that she would read *those* letters *then*.

Ngoài quy tắc chung trên đây, người học cần nhớ rằng *tình huống thật và thời gian khi hành động được thuật lại* đóng vai trò rất quan trọng trong khi chuyển từ lời nói trực tiếp sang lời nói gián tiếp.

PART 2: EXERCISE**A. PHONETICS****I. Choose the word which has the underlined part pronounced differently from the others.**

1. A. ranked ed B. gained ed C. prepared ed D. proved ed
2. A. host B. honor C. hockey D. horror
3. A. badminton B. swallow C. challenge D. ballet
4. A. teammate B. reading C. creating D. seaside
5. A. athlete B. author C. length D. southern
6. A. touch B. foul C. account D. mount
7. A. lose B. vote C. control D. social
8. A. rear B. bear C. gear D. year
9. A. please B. peace C. seat D. spread
10. A. overlooks B. beliefs C. towards D. rights

II. Choose the words that have the different stress from the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. chemist | B. browser | C. technique | D. programme |
| 2. A. aspect | B. advance | C. spaceship | D. progress (n) |
| 3. A. reality | B. unable | C. enormous | D. benefit |
| 4. A. explorer | B. physicist | C. scientist | D. telephone |
| 5. A. experiment | B. biologist | C. ordinary | D. development |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Underline the incorrect verb form.

1. I **am playing/ will play** tennis at 11.00 this morning.
2. Oh, I need to make a quick phone call.
OK. I **am waiting/ will wait** for you here.
3. We need to discuss this. **Are you doing/ Will you do** anything tomorrow?
4. Can you come for dinner on Saturday?
No, I'm sorry. We **are going/ will go** to the theatre.
5. In the future most people **are working/ will work** at home.
6. Well, I'm rather busy at the moment.
I **am calling/ will call** you back Ok?

II. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. Facebook was built on the _____ of earlier social network sites like MySpace and Bebo.
A. succeed B. successful C. successfully D. success
2. It is thought that driverless cars will transform the way we move _____ cities in the future.
A. around B. away C. along D. ahead
3. Little Pascal _____ a mechanical calculator which could do additions or subtractions very quickly.
A. discovered B. found C. found out D. invented
4. Robots save workers from _____ dangerous tasks.
A. making B. having C. performing D. carrying
5. Many people believe that robots have made workers jobless, _____ that is not necessarily true.
A. but B. and C. so D. or
6. Recent _____ developments have made robots more user-friendly, and intelligent.
A. science B. scientist C. scientific D. scientifically
7. Teenagers spend most of their time playing computer games; _____, they lose their interests in daily activities.
A. moreover B. so C. however D. as a result
8. Science and technology have _____ the life safe, secure and comfortable.
A. transformed B. made C. done D. changed
9. Terrorists are using modern technology _____ their destructive work.
A. about B. at C. for D. with

10. With the advance of the science and technology, our life changes greatly in various ____.

- A. scenes B. fields C. sights D. regions

III. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct future tense.

1. We **(implant)** _____ chips in the brain to control devices by the year 2050.
2. With commercial space travel, we **(take)** _____ minerals from the moon at this time in 2030.
3. Universal translation **(become)** _____ common in mobile devices.
4. We **(create)** _____ a synthetic brain that functions like the real one in the year 2050.
5. Japan **(build)** _____ a robotic moon base by 2020, built by robots, and for robots.
6. China **(connect)** _____ Beijing to London with a high-speed railway soon.
7. Car-makers **(design)** _____ self-driving cars to offer extreme safety and ease of transport.
8. The US military officials say that navy ships **(run)** _____ on 50 percent of biofuels by 2020.
9. Your movies _____ **(help)** you choose the best course for your aims and goals.
10. What _____ **(I/ do)** after the course?

C. READING

I. Read the text and fill in the blanks with the suitable words.

Television is (1) _____ of man's most important (2) _____ of communication. It brings (3) _____ and sounds from (4) _____ the world into millions of homes. A person (5) _____ a television (6) _____ can sit in his (7) _____ and watch the president (8) _____ a speech or visit a foreign country. He can see a war being fought and watch statement try to bring about peace. (9) _____ television, (10) _____ viewers can see and learn about people, places, and things in faraway lands.

II. Read, then choose the best answer (A, B, c or D) to complete the gap.

The next generation of telephone users will probably laugh (1) _____ we explain how we used to stand next to a wall in the kitchen to (2) _____ a phone call. Mobile communications, already highly advanced compared with a decade ago, will completely change communications in the next few years.

(3) _____ there are millions of people using mobile phones, most people know (4) _____ about the mobile telecommunications industry and its technology. There are three types of mobile phone. These are hand portables, pocket-sized hand portables and transportables. The smallest and most popular are the pocket-sized hand portables. These work on rechargeable batteries, which allow an (5) _____ of up to 80 minutes' conversation. Mobiles that are fitted permanently in a vehicle do not (6) _____ on separate batteries. They require an external aerial on the vehicle. This can mean a stronger signal with clearer (7) _____. Transportables have a high power capability and can be used (8) _____ anywhere. They come with powerful battery packs for longer, continuous use and may also be put (9) _____ a vehicle, using its electrics. They (10) _____ to be bulkier than hand portables.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. A. unless | B. when | C. while | D. whether |
| 2. A. make | B. give | C. take | D. do |
| 3. A. In addition | B. Because | C. As a result | D. Although |
| 4. A. little | B. some | C. few | D. lots |
| 5. A. amount | B. account | C. activity | D. average |
| 6. A. rely | B. create | C. carry | D. insist |
| 7. A. wave | B. letter | C. speech | D. speed |
| 8. A. mostly | B. hardly | C. most | D. almost |
| 9. A. on with | B. into | C. up with | D. in to |
| 10. A. used | B. have | C. tend | D. are |

III. Read the text below and choose the best answer for each question after the text.

SOME ANIMALS CAN PREDICT FUTURE EARTHQUAKES

A recent investigation by scientists at the U.S. Geological Survey shows that strange animal behavior might help predict future earthquakes. Investigators found such occurrences in a ten-kilometer radius of the epicenter of a fairly recent quake. Some birds screeched and flew about wildly: dogs yelped and ran around uncontrollably.

Scientists believe that animals can perceive these environmental changes as early as several days before the mishap.

In 1976, after observing animal behavior, the Chinese were able to predict a devastating quake. Although hundreds of thousands of people were killed, the government was able to evacuate millions of other people and thus keep the death toll at a lower level.

- What prediction may be made by observing animal behavior?
 - An impending earthquake
 - The number of people who will die
 - The ten-kilometer radius of the epicenter
 - Environmental changes
- Why can animals perceive these changes when humans cannot?
 - Animals are smarter than humans.
 - Animals have certain instincts that humans don't possess.
 - By running around the house, they can feel the vibrations.
 - Humans don't know where to look.
- Which of the following is NOT true?
 - Some animals may be able to sense an approaching earthquake
 - By observing animal behavior scientists perhaps can predict earthquakes.
 - The Chinese have successfully predicted an earthquake and saved many lives
 - All birds and dogs in a ten-kilometer radius of the epicenter went wild before the earthquake.
- In this passage the word "evacuate" most nearly means

A. remove	B. destroy	C. exile	D. emaciate
-----------	------------	----------	-------------
- If scientists can accurately predict earthquakes, there will be

A. fewer animals going crazy	B. a lower death rate
C. fewer people evacuated	D. fewer environmental changes

D. WRITING**I. Put into the reported speech.**

1. Tom said: "I want to buy a pocket calculator for my father."
.....
2. She said; "I once spent a summer in this village."
.....
3. The nurse said: "The patient in this room didn't obey your orders, doctor."
.....
4. They said to me : "You taught us English last year."
.....
5. Mr. Brown said : "Our trip cost us two thousand dollars."
.....
6. He said to her : " I can't find my hat anywhere in this room."
.....
7. My father said to them : "My secretary is going to finish this job."
.....
8. They said : "We can't meet you here either today or tomorrow."
.....
9. My mother said : "I think it won't rain tomorrow."
.....
10. He said: "Your car has been stolen, John."
.....
11. They said : "The river is rising early this year."
.....
12. He said : "I'll expect her to come soon."
.....
13. Our teacher said : "World War II broke out in 1939."
.....
14. The students said : "We'll be sitting for our next exam next Monday."
.....
15. He said : "I'm going to finish this work."
.....

II. Write a paragraph about the topic: "Is television a blessing or a curse?", using the cues given.**IS TELEVISION A BLESSING OR A CURSE?**

1. Human beings/ gained much specific advancement recently. There/ be a series of inventions that/ have brought human conveniences/ a modern life.
2. Television/ set as a good example that certainly influences/ our life in communication and entertainment. However, TV also/ cause some bad effects of time-consuming/ health problems.

3. In the first place, television/ help people in the ways of communicating/ each other and entertaining their life. Thanks/ the appearance TV, people can keep/ with up-to-date/ the world.
4. What our/ be if we do not have a TV at home. Because TV is a cheap/ available tool/ provide us daily information.
5. Also, watching TV is a valuable kind of entertainment that/ help people relax after working hard or suffering/ a busy life. Last but not least, TV has changed husband's behavior in connecting/ each other.
6. Beside of good advantages of TV, watching TV may cause some disorders in health/ working time/ well.
7. Some people spend long hours in/ of a TV set, they may neglect then work or duty in taking care/ their family members. And young people may work less effectively/ addicted to watching TV lead to passiveness and laziness.
8. In conclusion, everything/ have two sides and TV is optional. It is obvious that TV/ benefit our life in making people become friendly and close. I totally agree that TV is a great invention and we/ have to be aware/ its good points by using it suitably.

[illegible]

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Which word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. wh <u>ar</u> f | B. pl <u>a</u> ce | C. volc <u>a</u> no | D. pl <u>a</u> ne |
| 2. A. fish <u>er</u> man | B. tick <u>e</u> t | C. priso <u>n</u> er | D. ov <u>e</u> r |
| 3. A. h <u>o</u> tel | B. po <u>s</u> tcard | C. sh <u>o</u> re | D. c <u>o</u> ld |
| 4. A. inclu <u>d</u> ed | B. call <u>e</u> d | C. pho <u>n</u> ed | D. arriv <u>e</u> d |
| 5. A. m <u>u</u> ch | B. teach <u>e</u> r | C. bea <u>ch</u> | D. bro <u>ch</u> ure |

II. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- An astronaut has to wear a spacesuit _____ it may be very cold in space.
A. so B. but C. because D. because of
- The UFO landed on a _____ area.
A. grass B. grassy C. grassed D. grassing
- Scientists have been trying to find _____ of aliens.
A. amounts B. records C. traces D. sights
- There have been many UFO _____ reported.
A. sights B. signs C. signals D. sightings
- Mars is called the Red Planet due to its _____ surface.
A. red B. redder C. reddest D. reddish
- In the mid-19th century, scientists discovered that Mars had some similarities _____ Earth.
A. to B. with C. of D. from
- Neptune is bright blue _____ it is named after the Roman God of the sea.
A. because B. but C. so D. or
- There is a lot of interest in doing experiments in the _____ conditions.
A. weigh B. weighing C. weight D. weightless
- Titan, one of Saturn's _____, has a thick atmosphere.
A. satellite B. spaceships C. moons D. comets
- Scientists believe that Mars also _____ seasons just as the Earth does.
A. spends B. experiences C. experiments D. takes

III. Use the correct form of the words given to complete the sentences.

- Robots save workers from performing _____ tasks. (**danger**)
- One disadvantage of robots is its high cost of the _____. (**produce**)
- Robots are being used in both _____ manufacturing and the _____ field. (**industry - medicine**)
- There is no _____ reason why Japan will not be able to make progress in robotics. (**technology**)
- The key to YouTube's success is the _____ for anyone from anywhere in the world to broadcast themselves for free. (**able**)

6. Due to the _____ in the science and technology, impossible things have become possible.
7. Robots increase worker _____ by preventing accidents since humans are not performing _____ jobs. (**safe - risk**)
8. As a _____ (**science**), Professor Tran Dai Nghia set an example as a true _____ (research) who devoted himself to the _____ (**science**) career.
9. Hellen isn't a great _____ of biotechnology. (**admire**)
10. Paul's uncle has worked as a _____ for twelve years. (**conservation**)

IV. Read the passage and fill in the blank with the correct words.

Most American television programmes (1) _____ produced in Hollywood. Each year, proposals (2) _____ new television serials are submitted to network executives for (3) _____. Only a few are accepted often those linked (4) _____ a highly successful performer or producer.

The (5) _____ phase is the writing of scripts. These scripts are reviewed (6) _____ the network and a small (7) _____ is selected to be (8) _____ into pilot programmes if the programming executives like a pilot programme or it (9) _____ good rating in a trial telecast, the pilot eventually gets produced as a regularly scheduled (10) _____.

V. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Computers are helpful (1) _____ many ways. First, they are fast. They can work with information even (2) _____ quickly than a person. Second, computers can work with a lot of information at the same time. Third, they can (3) _____ information for a long time. They do not forget things that the common people do. (4) _____, computers are almost always correct. They are not perfect, but they usually do not (5) _____ mistakes.

Recently, it is important (6) _____ about computers. There are a number of things to learn. Some companies have (7) _____ at work. In addition, most diversities (8) _____ day and night courses in Computer Science. Another way to learn is from a book, or from a friend. After a few hours of practice, you can (9) _____ with computers. You may not be an expert, but you can have (10) _____.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. at | B. on | C. in | D. over |
| 2. A. more | B. rather | C. much | D. less |
| 3. A. hold | B. keep | C. stay | D. carry |
| 4. A. Moreover | B. However | C. Therefore | D. Nevertheless |
| 5. A. do | B. make | C. have | D. take |
| 6. A. know | B. knowing | C. to know | D. knew |
| 7. A. discussions | B. meetings | C. schools | D. classes |
| 8. A. send | B. spend | C. bring | D. offer |
| 9. A. work | B. make | C. use | D. take |
| 10. A. for fun | B. funny | C. enjoy | D. fun |

VI. Read the passage and use the words in the box to fill in the space.
which, smaller, ago, which, make, where, much, many, what,

The first world's computer was built at University of Pennsylvania in 1946, although computer-like machines were built in the 19th century. Computers were (1) commercially for the first time in the 1950s, and a lot of progress has been made then. Computers are now much (2) and more powerful.

Computers are used in (3) fields – in business, science, medicine, and education. They can be used to forecast the weather or to control robots (4) make cars. The computer's memory is the place (5) information is kept and calculations are done. A computer cannot think for itself. It must be told exactly (6) to do. A lot of difficult calculations can be done very quickly on a computer. Computers don't (7) mistakes. Stories are heard sometimes about computers paying people too..... (8) money or sending them bills for things they didn't buy. These mistakes are made by programmers. Some years (9), an American computer-controlled rocket went out of control and had to be destroyed. The accident was caused by a small mistake in one line of the program, (10) cost the USA 18 million dollars. Criminals have found that computer crimes are a lot easier than robbing banks. Hundreds of millions of dollars are stolen from business every year by people changing the information in computers.

Unit 12

LIFE ON OTHER PLANETS

PART 1: vocabulary and GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

Word	Type	Pronunciation	Meaning
accommodate	(v)	/ə'kɒmədeɪt/	cung cấp nơi ăn, chốn ở
adventure	(n)	/əd'ventʃə(r)/	cuộc phiêu lưu
alien	(n)	/'eɪliən/	người ngoài hành tinh
experience	(n)	/'ɪk'spɪəriəns/	trải nghiệm
flying saucer	(n)	/'flaɪɪŋ 'sɔ:zə(r)/	đĩa bay
galaxy	(n)	/'gæləksi/	dải ngân hà
Jupiter	(n)	/'dʒu:pɪtə(r)/	sao Mộc
Mars	(n)	/mɑ:z/	sao Hỏa
messenger	(n)	/'mesɪndʒə(r)/	người đưa tin
Mercury	(n)	/'mɜ:kjəri/	sao Thủy
NASA	(n)	/'næsə/	cơ quan Hàng không và Vũ trụ Mỹ
Neptune	(n)	/'neptju:n/	sao Hải Vương
outer space	(n)	/'aʊtə(r) speɪs/	ngoài vũ trụ
planet	(n)	/'plænɪt/	hành tinh
Saturn	(n)	/'sætɜ:n/	sao Thổ
solar system	(n)	/'səʊlə(r) 'sɪstəm/	hệ mặt trời
terrorist	(n)	/'terərɪst/	kẻ khủng bố
UFO	(n)	/ju: ef 'əʊ/	đĩa bay, vật thể bay không xác định
Venus	(n)	/'vi:nəs/	sao Kim
weightless	(adj)	/'weɪtləs/	không trọng lượng

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

Câu hỏi trong lời nói gián tiếp: Câu hỏi trong lời nói gián tiếp được chia làm:

3.1. Câu hỏi bắt đầu với các trợ động từ: Ta thêm “If/whether”

Trực tiếp: “Does John understand music?” he asked.

Gián tiếp: He asked if/whether John understood music.

3.2. Câu hỏi bắt đầu “who, whom, what, which, where, when, why, how”: Các từ để hỏi trên sẽ được giữ nguyên trong câu gián tiếp:

Trực tiếp: “What is your name?” he asked.

Gián tiếp: He asked me what my name was.

3.3. Các dạng đặc biệt của câu hỏi trong lời nói gián tiếp

a. Shall/ would dùng để diễn tả đề nghị, lời mời:

Trực tiếp: “Shall I bring you some tea?” he asked.

Gián tiếp: He offered to bring me some tea.

Trực tiếp: “Shall we meet at the theatre?” he asked.

Gián tiếp: He suggested meeting at the theatre.

b. Will/would dùng để diễn tả sự yêu cầu:

Trực tiếp: Will you help me, please?

Gián tiếp: He asked me to help him.

Trực tiếp: Will you lend me your dictionary?

Gián tiếp: He asked me to lend him my dictionary.

c. Câu mệnh lệnh và câu yêu cầu trong lời nói gián tiếp.

Trực tiếp: Go away!

Gián tiếp: He told me/The boys to go away.

Trực tiếp: Listen to me, please,

Gián tiếp: He asked me to listen to him.

d. Câu cảm thán trong lời nói gián tiếp.

Trực tiếp: What a lovely dress!

Gián tiếp: She exclaimed that the dress was lovely.

e. Các hình thức hỗn hợp trong lời nói gián tiếp.

Lời nói trực tiếp có thể bao gồm nhiều hình thức hỗn hợp: câu khẳng định, câu hỏi, câu mệnh lệnh, câu cảm thán

Trực tiếp: She said, “Can you play the piano?” and I said “No”

Gián tiếp: She asked me if I could play the piano and I said that I could not.

PART 2: EXERCISE

A. PHONETICS

I. Which word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. plates <u>s</u> | B. cakes <u>s</u> | C. mates <u>s</u> | D. places <u>s</u> |
| 2. A. change <u>d</u> | B. learn <u>e</u> d | C. laugh <u>e</u> d | D. arriv <u>e</u> d |
| 3. A. <u>e</u> mergency | B. <u>r</u> esident | C. de <u>p</u> osit | D. pref <u>e</u> r |
| 4. A. want <u>e</u> d | B. decid <u>e</u> d | C. visit <u>e</u> d | D. look <u>e</u> d |
| 5. A. pr <u>i</u> son | B. l <u>i</u> mestone | C. k <u>i</u> nd | D. tr <u>i</u> be |
| 6. A. <u>w</u> hich | B. <u>w</u> ho | C. <u>w</u> hen | D. <u>w</u> here |
| 7. A. carr <u>y</u> | B. har <u>d</u> | C. car <u>d</u> | D. yar <u>d</u> |

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 8. A. <u>tw</u> ice | B. <u>fl</u> ight | C. <u>pie</u> ce | D. <u>mind</u> |
| 9. A. <u>ab</u> out | B. <u>ar</u> ound | C. <u>s</u> ound | D. <u>y</u> oung |
| 10. A. <u>c</u> over | B. <u>o</u> ven | C. <u>c</u> offee | D. <u>c</u> ompany |

II. Choose the words that have the different stress from the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. underground | B. poisonous | C. oxygen | D. Jupiter |
| 2. A. airless | B. Saturn | C. daytime | D. transform |
| 3. A. terrorist | B. adventure | C. Mercury | D. galaxy |
| 4. A. captain | B. series | C. precise | D. weightless |
| 5. A. environment | B. inhabitant | C. accommodate | D. temperature |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- People will take _____ of robots to do household chores.
A. chance B. condition C. success D. advantage
- Many people think that robots will make workers _____.
A. employed B. unemployed C. no job D. the jobless
- It is certain that robots will _____ the quality of our lives.
A. improve B. rise C. lift D. develop
- With healthier _____ and better medical _____, people will have a longer life expectancy.
A. ways – care B. lifestyles – care C. life – cares D. lifestyles – medicine
- Many people think the cyberworld will _____ the real world.
A. take B. provide C. take place D. replace
- The invention of penicillin is very useful because it has _____ lots of lives.
A. lost B. brought C. saved D. solved
- It is said that in a couple of decades, we _____ telepathy and holography.
A. use B. will be used C. have used D. will be using
- Mars is named _____ the Roman God of war.
A. to B. about C. after D. under
- By 2050 we _____ in smart homes.
A. will have lived B. will be lived
C. will live D. are living
- The Earth seems too small to _____ the increasing population.
A. provide B. accommodate C. supply D. stand

II. The word in brackets at the end of each of the following sentences can be used to form a word that fits suitably in the blank.

- Children have to moral lessons in school to avoid behavior of _____ in future.
(morality)

2. If you don't go to work regularly, you will be punished for _____ in work.
(regularity)
3. In our country, men and women are equal. No one supports gender _____.
(equality)
4. Every young man undergoing military training is bound to experience _____.
(comfort)
5. Tom's failure was due not to _____ but to his own mistakes. **(fortune)**
6. He is a notorious _____ who robbed a bank yesterday. **(crime)**
7. It is forbidden to hunt for that kind of bird. It has been listed as one of the _____ species. **(danger)**
8. The weather was terrible, so we had a very _____ holiday. **(please)**
9. The _____ of the new guest caused trouble to me. **(arrive)**
10. _____ to the school is by examination only. **(admit)**
11. He wanted a divorce because his wife had been _____. **(faith)**
12. I didn't know who it was- with a mask on, she was completely _____. **(recognize)**
13. "This is not a good essay" said the lecture. "I find your arguments _____. **(convince)**
14. Traveling in an aero plane for the first time was a _____ experience. **(memory)**
15. In winter it is important for farmers to provide food and _____ for their animals.
(warm)

III. Rewrite the following sentences using questions words + to-infinitives.

1. We don't know where we should put the sofa.

2. The rules didn't specify who I should speak to in case of an emergency.

3. Mai wondered how she could ride the scooter.

4. Let us decide when we should start the project.

5. Could you tell me where I can find a good hotel?

6. We must find out what we are to do next.

7. A good dictionary tells you how you should pronounce the words.

8. We are not sure who we will meet at the entrance.

9. I can't remember when I have to turn off the oven.

10. Do you know what you should look for?

C. READING**I. Choose the words given to fill in the blanks correctly.**

light	between	becomes	month
around	seems	see	earth

Once a month, the moon travels in a complete circle (1) _____ the earth. As it moves in its circle, it (2) _____ to change shape. This is because we, on Earth, (3) _____ only that section of the moon that catches the sun's light.

When the sun, the moon and the earth are in a straight line with the moon in the middle, it is impossible for us to see the moon. At this point, the moon is said to be new. We are unable to see it in this position because the side facing the (4) _____ is in shadow. As the new moon begins to circle the earth, however, we begin to see that part of its surface that catches the sun's (5) _____. After some days, when it reaches the position where the earth is (6) _____ the sun and the moon, we see the full moon. Later, it again (7) _____ half moon, becoming smaller and smaller until it disappears again to become the new moon. This cycle takes 28 days or a lunar (8) _____.

II. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Why does Man want to go to other planets (1) _____ the solar system? Just for adventure? True, (2) _____ is adventure in space travel. But a (3) _____ to other planets would also be (4) _____. For example, space stations could be built that would give us (5) _____ information about the weather.

In space stations (6) _____ around the earth, Man could live and study the cloud formation on (7) _____ surface. These formations could tell us what weather to (8) _____ in any part of the world at any time. (9) _____ information would be useful to pilots, to ship captains, and even to farmers (10) _____ must set dates for planting and harvesting.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A. in | B. on | C. at | D. of |
| 2. A. this | B. there | C. that | D. it |
| 3. A. travel | B. fly | C. trip | D. drive |
| 4. A. practice | B. practiced | C. practicing | D. practical |
| 5. A. valuable | B. wealthy | C. expensive | D. amused |
| 6. A. moves | B. moving | C. moved | D. moveable |
| 7. A. his | B. her | C. its | D. their |
| 8. A. hope | B. believe | C. consider | D. expect |
| 9. A. Such | B. Those | C. So | D. These |
| 10. A. which | B. who | C. whom | D. whose |

III. Choose the item A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.

A UFO (Unidentified Flying Object) is any object flying in the sky which cannot be identified by the person who sees it. Sometimes the object is investigated. If people cannot figure out what the object is after an investigation, it is called a UFO. If they figure out what the object is, it can no longer be called a UFO because it has been identified.

Even though UFOs can be anything, people can use the word UFO when they are talking about alien spacecraft. Flying saucer is another word that is often used to describe an unidentified flying object.

Studies estimate that 50-90% of all reported sightings are identified later. Usually 10-20% are never identified. Studies also show that very few UFO sightings are hoaxes (people trying to trick other people). Most UFOs are actually natural or man-made objects that looked strange. 80-90% of UFOs are identified as one of three different things: (a) astronomical causes (for example: planets, stars, or meteors); (b) aircraft; and (c) balloons. 10-20% of UFOs are other causes, such as birds, clouds, mirages, searchlights, etc.

- Another word used to describe a UFO is _____.
A. flying saucer B. cooking plane C. spacecraft D. astronaut
- How many percent of all reported sightings are not identified?
A. 20-30% B. 10-20% C. 30-50% D. 80-90%
- Most of UFOs are identified as one of the following things except _____.
A. balloons B. clouds C. stars D. rains
- Which of the following sentences is NOT true?
A. UFO means Unidentified Flying Object.
B. Many UFO sightings are hoaxes.
C. UFO is often used to talk about alien objects.
D. Over half of all reported UFO sightings are identified.
- What does the word “figure out” in paragraph 1 mean?
A. calculate B. observe C. explain D. require

D. WRITING

I. Write the correct form of the words to complete the sentences.

- He always has a big smile. He is always _____. (cheer)
- Now she is very tired, because she spent a _____ night. (rest)
- That old man has a bad memory. He is _____. (forget)
- He does not care about his actions. He is often _____. (thought)
- You should throw this pen away. It is _____. (use)
- The man does not pay attention to mistakes. He is _____. (care)
- The picture has many colours. It is very _____. (colour)
- We enjoyed the party. It was very _____. (joy)
- She did not show any fear. She was _____. (fear)
- He does not have any friends. He is _____. (friend)

II. Complete the directed speech sentences.

- Mr. Smith said: “Where are you going on your vacation this year?”
→ Mr. Smith asked
- She said: “Did the mechanics finish repairing your car?”
→ She asked

3. She said: “Why has David been looking so miserable lately?”
→ She asked
4. I asked my friend: “Was anyone hurt in the car accident last month?”
→ He asked my friend
5. She asked me: “How old are you now ?”
→ She asked me
6. He said to her: “Have you been to town today ?”
→ She asked her
7. John said: “How long does it take you to get to London, Mary?”
→ John asked Mary
8. The policeman asked the little girl: “What’s your name?”
→ The policeman asked the little girl
9. Mr. Green said to his secretary: “Who did you talk to a few minutes ago?”
→ Mr. Green asked his secretary
10. Paul said: “Can you swim, Mary?”
→ Paul asked Mary
11. He said: “Where can I find her in this town?”
→ He asked
12. She asked her son: “Do you know which is the cup you used ?”
→ She asked her son
13. Helen said: “What did you say, Jack ?”
→ Helen asked Jack
14. She said to him: “Why didn’t you get up early this morning ?”
→ She asked him
15. He said: “Will it rain tonight ?”
→ He asked
16. “Every weekend, the astronauts can have private video-conferences with their families on the Earth,” Dr. Nelson said.
→ Dr. Nelson said
17. “Have the astronauts ever forgotten anything from the Earth?” Nick asked his teacher.
→ Nick asked his teacher.....
18. “The astronauts on the ISS use a 3-D printer on board to print certain objects,” the teacher answered Nick.
→ The teacher told Nick
19. “Where can we look for life?” Nga asked Dr. Nelson .
→ Nga asked Dr. Nelson
20. “Ganymede, the largest moon of Jupiter, has a large salt water ocean,” the teacher said.
→ The teacher said

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each unfinished sentence below.

1. The facsimile _____ by Alexander Bain in 1843.
A. is invented B. was invented C. invented D. has been invented
2. First, fry the onions _____, add the potatoes.
A. than B. then C. after D. before
3. He _____ a prize in the competition last week.
A. win B. won C. was won D. has win
4. Who _____ the company?
A. goes B. walks C. jogs D. runs
5. _____ is an instrument for making sounds louder.
A. Loudspeaker B. Recorder C. Facsimile D. Radio
6. The doctor told me _____ more fresh fruit.
A. eat B. to eat C. eating D. ate
7. Can you **repair** my bike?
A. use B. fix C. adjust D. A&B
8. Coffee was known in Europe _____ 'Arabian wine'.
A. as B. like C. the same D. unlike
9. The information _____ for future use.
A. stores B. stored C. is stored D. are stored
10. I saw a _____ flying overhead.
A. train B. helicopter C. conveyor belt D. coach
11. This beautiful picture _____ by Mary.
A. is drawn B. is drew C. is draw D. is drawing
12. Don't **touch** the paint! It's still wet.
A. do a job with something
B. take something
C. put your hand or finger on something
D. put paint on something to change the color
13. I warned him _____ too close to the fire.
A. not to go B. not going C. no going D. didn't go
14. _____ is a pen that has a very small ball at the end.
A. Crayon B. Fountain pen C. Pencil D. Ball-point pen
15. Tobacco is taxed in most countries, along with alcohol.
A. in the same way as something B. but not something
C. for example D. including
16. James picked up the _____ and said "Hello".
A. vacuum B. printer C. telephone D. fax machine

17. Children, please behave!

- A. do and say the right things
- B. do something
- C. do what somebody tells you to do
- D. more on your legs, but not run

18. We now toast bread _____ a toaster on the table.

- A. by
- B. with
- C. from
- D. in

19. Which _____ shall I press to turn the radio on?

- A. button
- B. roll
- C. roller
- D. plug

20. Don't sit _____ the sun too long.

- A. among
- B. on
- C. over
- D. in

II. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Long ago a lot of people (1) _____ the moon was a god. Other people thought it was just a light in the sky. And others thought it was a big (2) _____ of cheese!

The telescopes were made, and men saw that the moon was really another world. They wondered (3) _____ it was like. They dreamed of going there. On July 20, 1969, that dream came (4) _____. Two American astronauts landed on the moon. (5) _____ names were Neil Armstrong and Edwin Aldrin.

The first thing the men found was that the moon is covered (6) _____ dust. The dust is so thick that the men left (7) _____ where they walked. Those were the first marks a living thing had ever made on the moon. And they could (8) _____ there for years and years. There is no wind or rain to wipe them off. The two men (9) _____ rocks to bring back to Earth for study. They dug up dirt to bring back. They set up machines to find out things people wanted to know. Then they were off on their long trip (10) _____ the earth.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------|------------|
| 1. A. told | B. guessed | C. thought | D. said |
| 2. A. form | B. ball | C. stone | D. round |
| 3. A. what | B. which | C. that | D. how |
| 4. A. real | B. true | C. unreal | D. untrue |
| 5. A. Theirs | B. His | C. Its | D. Their |
| 6. A. with | B. for | C. to | D. by |
| 7. A. fingerprints | B. handprints | C. footprints | D. prints |
| 8. A. go | B. remain | C. put | D. run |
| 9. A. got up | B. gave up | C. picked up | D. set up |
| 10. A. onto | B. from to | C. into | D. back to |

III. Choose the correct words in the box to fill in the blanks of the text.

Why does Man want to go to other planets (1) _____ the solar system? Just for adventure? True, (2) _____ is adventure in space travel. But a (3) _____ to other planets would also be (4) _____. For example, space stations could be built that would give us (5) _____ information about the weather.

In space stations (6) _____ around the earth, Man could live and study the cloud formation on (7) _____ surface. These formations could tell us what weather to (8) _____ in any part of the world at any time. (9) _____ information would be useful to pilots, to ship captains, and even to farmers (10) _____ must set dates for planting and harvesting.

IV. Put these sentences into the reported speech.

1. He said to her, "You are my friend."
.....
2. Johnny said to his mother, "I don't know how to do this exercise."
.....
3. "Don't come back before one o'clock", advised my brother.
.....
4. "Cook it in butter", Mrs Brown said to her daughter.
.....
5. The pupils said "Teacher, give us better marks, please."
.....
6. My friend said, "Are you going to leave tomorrow?"
.....
7. "Have you done your homework?", said my mother.
.....
8. I asked Bill, "What time did you go to bed last night?"
.....
9. Paul said, "I must go home now."
.....
10. "There is an accident", said the policeman.
.....
11. "We are waiting for the school bus", said the children.
.....
12. "Must you go now?" said Mr Brown.
.....
13. "Are you going to visit your aunt tomorrow?" asked Tom.
.....
14. "Listen to me and don't make a noise," said the teacher to his students.
.....
15. "I'm tired of eating fish", said Mary to Helen.
.....
16. "The sun always rises in the east," said Peter.
.....
17. "I didn't steal your fur coat yesterday," said Samny to Jean.
.....

18. "You must do your homework everyday", said Miss Lan to us.

.....

19. "Will we read the story?", Bill asked his teacher.

.....

20. "I don't know where Alice is," said Vicky.

.....

21. Mary asked me "Can you tell me why you are so sad?"

.....

22. "Will you please find out when he last wrote to me?" Jane said to her friend.

.....

23. "You must decide what you want to do", she said to her daughter.

.....

V. Choose the words or phrases that are not correct in Standard English.

1. James should be tell the news as soon as possible.

A B C D

2. The assistant asked Helen whether those shoes was too small for her.

A B C D

3. It was late, so we decided taking a taxi home.

A B C D

4. I don't know who wrote the song, but I'll try and find about.

A B C D

5. She showed me where did I left my luggage.

A B C D

VI. Choose the word (A, B, C, or D) that best fits each of the blank spaces.

The Amazon (1) _____ in a stream near the top of a mountain which (2) _____ Cerro Huagra. The stream is called the Huarco. (3) _____ the Huarco becomes a river which is known (4) _____ the Ucayali. The Ucayali then becomes the Amazon. The (5) _____ of the Amazon from the (6) _____ of the Huarco to the Atlantic Ocean is 6,448 kilometers.

- | | | | |
|-------------|--------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. begin | B. began | C. begins | D. is beginning |
| 2. A. call | B. calls | C. is calling | D. is called |
| 3. A. Late | B. Lately | C. Later | D. Latest |
| 4. A. as | B. so | C. like | D. alike |
| 5. A. long | B. length | C. wide | D. narrow |
| 6. A. begin | B. beginning | C. start | D. starting |

VII. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct tenses.

- By the end of this century, scientists (**discover**) _____ intelligent life.
- Beagle 2 - the first British spaceship to Mars - (**look for**) _____ signs of aliens this time next month.

3. Astronauts **(travel)** _____ to planets outside our solar system by 2050.
4. I expect your English **(improve)** _____ a lot by the time you get back from England.
5. NASA **(develop)** _____ new aircraft to replace space shuttles by the end of this decade.
6. The four planets closet to the sun - Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars - **(be)** _____ called the terrestrial planets because they have solid, rocky surfaces.
7. Our grandparents **(come)** _____ to stay with us next weekend.
8. People **(wonder)** _____ for ages whether we are alone in the universe.
9. This time next week, we **(take)** _____ an English test.
10. By the end of this year, I (learn) _____ English for 6 years.

VIII. Write meaningful sentences about the appearance of aliens based on the words or phrases given, using “may/ might”.

1. Aliens/ a hard container/ the brain.
.....
2. They/ two eyes/ a nose/ a mouth/ us.
.....
3. Their eyes/ bug-like/ and/ the nose/ not/ in the middle of the face.
.....
4. Besides teeth/ aliens/ other systems/ eating.
.....
5. They/ two arms/ but/ arms/ suckers/ pick up small objects.
.....
6. Their hand/ only three or four fingers.
.....
7. The number of joints/ greater/ and/ direction of bending/ different.
.....

FINAL TERM TEST

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word with the letter(s) in bold pronounced differently from that/ those of the others in each group.

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------|--------------|--------|
| 1. melancholy | chase | charity | charge |
| 2. gadget | gregarious | religion | Gorge |
| 3. carpentry | pseudo | psychiatrist | psycho |
| 4. satin | sanctuary | tiptoe | tone |
| 5. horrifying | honey | vehicle | hit |

II. Choose the word that has the different stress from the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. debris | B. Arctic | C. perhaps | D. thermal |
| 2. A. accent | B. rubbish | C. substance | D. collapse |
| 3. A. permanent | B. volcano | C. spectacle | D. illustrate |
| 4. A. earplug | B. erupt | C. severe | D. unique |
| 5. A. excursion | B. evacuate | C. contaminate | D. government |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that fits the blank in each sentence.

- If we go on littering, the environment _____ seriously polluted.
A. becomes B. will become C. became D. would become
- The boy was very hungry _____ he ate nothing.
A. so B. and C. therefore D. but
- The man suggests _____ to the seaside in the summer.
A. to go B. go C. going D. goes
- A dripping faucet _____ 500 liters of water a month.
A. can waste B. is wasted C. waste D. are wasting
- He sighed _____ when he heard the news.
A. sadly B. sad C. sadden D. sadness
- The boy hated _____ up very early in the morning.
A. having get B. to have get C. having to get D. to have getting
- Please _____ the lights. It's very dark.
A. turn on B. go on C. get on D. put on
- Not only _____ her father, but you will know about his job if you go with us.
A. you meet B. will you meet C. you are meeting D. do you meet
- The man sat down on the chair _____ started to tell the story.
A. so B. and C. or D. because
- You should travel by bike _____ by motorbike to save energy.
A. therefore B. instead of C. however D. because

11. Please go _____ with what you're doing. Don't look at them!
A. on B. out C. away D. down
12. The new appliance does not only work _____ but also saves energy.
A. effect B. effective C. effectively D. effectiveness
13. In Western countries electricity gas and water _____ necessities.
A. was B. has been C. have D. are
14. Who will _____ the cat when you are away on business?
A. look at B. look forward to C. look alter D. look for
15. Does she suggest _____ some more butter?
A. buying B. buys C. to buy D. bought
16. You look hot in that coat. Why don't you _____ it _____?
A. put/on B. put/away C. takes/out D. take/off
17. The village of the stone carving _____ near the foot of the Marble Mountain.
A. lay B. lies C. lain D. laid
18. Do you like the language center _____ in the Women's Magazine?
A. advertiser B. advertised C. advertising D. advertisement
19. Don't waste water or you will get an enormous _____ by the end of the month.
A. receipt B. paper C. bill D. letter
20. Electricity is a clean but _____ source of energy.
A. cheap B. expensive C. good D. useful

II. Choose the underlined word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that needs correcting.

- She will pay less but she uses two energy-saving bulbs.
A B C D
- The questions the teacher wrote on the board was not easy.
A B C D
- She walked ten kilometers a day to get water enough for her family to use.
A B C D
- We should make some posters and hang it around our school.
A B C D
- The teacher suggest that I should buy a good dictionary.
A B C D

III. Correct the verbs form to complete the sentences.

1. Be quiet! The baby (**sleep**)
2. The sun (**set**) in the West.
3. Mr Green always (**go**) to work by bus.
4. It (**not rain**) in the dry season.
5. They (**have**) lunch in the cafeteria now.
6. My little sister (**drink**) milk every day.
7. The doctor sometimes (**return**) home late.

8. He (**write**) a long novel at present.
9. Look! The bus (**come**).
10. The earth (**move**) around the sun.
11. Sometime (**smell**) good in the kitchen now.
12. His uncle (**teach**) English in our school five years ago.
13. The old man (**fall**) as he (**get**) into the bus.
14. When I saw him, he (**sit**) asleep in a chair.
15. There (**be**) a lot of noise at the fair yesterday.
16. It..... (**take**) me 5 minutes to walk to school last year.
17. They (**not speak**) to each other since they quarreled
18. (**try**) to learn English for years, but I (**not succeed**) yet.
19. I (**not see**) her since last week.
20. John (**do**) his homework already.
21. The train (**start**) before we arrived at the station.
22. There (**be**) an English class in this room tomorrow evening.
23. The film already (**begin**) when we got to the cinema.
24. You (**stay**) at home tonight?
25. I (**be**) twenty years old next June.
26. Where are you? - I'm upstairs. I (**have**) a bath.
27. All of them (**sing**) when I (**came**).
28. What you (**do**) at 7 p.m yesterday?
29. Where you (**spend**) your holiday last year?
30. Why didn't you listen while I (**speak**) to you?

IV. Complete the sentences, using the form of the words in brackets.

1. Anna asked me if the astronaut's costumes were made from _____. clothing. (**breath**)
2. After going through a storm, the plane began shaking _____. (**controllable**)
3. We definitely cannot live on the planet shown in this photo because it is _____. (**water**)
4. Mr. Armstrong is working in a _____ space which has no gravity. (**weight**)
5. The story talked about a _____ who wanted to occupy the spaceship. (**terrorism**)
6. When astronauts have trouble in outer space, they must act _____. (**appropriate**)
7. I feel _____ in the chat room because they are discussing a totally strange topic. (**visible**)
8. Hung has some _____ skills in speaking English with foreigners. (**communicate**)

C. READING

I. Read the two passages below and circle the best option (A, B, C, D).

An industrial society, especially one as centralised and concentrated as that of Britain, is heavily dependent on certain essential services: for instance, electricity supply, water, rail and road

transport, the harbours. The area of dependency has widened to include removing rubbish, hospital and ambulance services, and as the economy develops, central computer and information services as well. If any of these services ceases to operate, the whole economic system is in danger.

It is this interdependency of the economic system which makes the power of trade unions such an important issue. Single trade unions have easily to cut off many countries economic blood supply. This can happen more easily in Britain than in some other countries, in part because the labour force is highly organised. About 55 percent of British workers belong to unions, compared to under a quarter in the United States. For historical reasons, Britain's unions have tended to develop along trade and occupational lines, rather than on an industry-by-industry basis, which makes a wages policy, democracy in industry and the improvement of procedures for fixing wage levels difficult to achieve.

There are considerable strains and tensions in the trade union movement, some of them arising from their outdated and inefficient structure. Some unions have lost many members because of industrial changes. Others are involved in arguments about who should represent workers in new trades. Unions for skilled trades are separate from general unions, which means that different levels of wages for certain jobs are often a source of bad feeling between unions. In traditional trades which are being pushed out of existence by advancing technologies, unions can fight for their members' disappearing jobs to the point where the jobs of other unions' members are threatened or destroyed. The printing of newspapers both in the United States and in Britain has frequently been halted by the efforts of printers to hold on to their traditional highly paid job.

Trade unions have problems of internal communication just as managers in companies do, problems which multiply in very large unions or in those which bring workers in very different industries together into a single general union. Some trade union officials have to be re-elected regularly; others are elected, or even appointed, for life. Trade union officials have to work with a system of 'shop stewards' in many unions, 'shop stewards' being workers elected by other workers as their representatives at factory or works level.

1. Why is the question of trade union power important in Britain?
 - A. The economy is very interdependent
 - B. There are many essential services.
 - C. There are more unions in Britain than elsewhere.
 - D. Unions have been established a long time.
2. Why is it difficult to improve the procedures for fixing wage levels?
 - A. Some industries have no unions.
 - B. Unions are not organised according to industries.
 - C. Only 55 percent of workers belong to unions.
 - D. Some unions are too powerful.
3. Because of their out-of-date organisation some unions find it difficult to

A. bargain for high enough wages.	B. get new members to join.
C. learn new technologies.	D. change as industries change.
4. Disagreements arise between unions because some of them
 - A. try to win over members of other unions.
 - B. ignore agreements.
 - C. protect their own members at the expenses of others, take over other union's job.
 - D. take over other union's job.

5. In what ways are unions and large companies similar?

- A. both have too many managers
- B. both have problems in passing on information
- C. both lose touch with individual workers
- D. both their managements are too powerful

II. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, c or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Long ago a lot of people (1) ____ the moon was a god. Other people thought it was just a light in the sky. And others thought it was a big (2) _____ of cheese!

The telescopes were made, and men saw that the moon was really another world. They wondered (3) _____ it was like. They dreamed of going there. On July 20, 1969, that dream came (4) _____. Two American astronauts landed on the moon. (5) _____ names were Neil Armstrong and Edwin Aldrin.

The first thing the men found was that the moon is covered (6) _____ dust. The dust is so thick that the men left (7) _____ where they walked. Those were the first marks a living thing had ever made on the moon. And they could (8) _____ there for years and years. There is no wind or rain to wipe them off. The two men (9) _____ rocks to bring back to Earth for study. They dug up dirt to bring back They set up machines to find out things people wanted to know. Then they were off on their long trip (10) _____ the earth.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A. told | B. guessed | C. thought | D. said |
| 2. A. form | B. ball | C. stone | D. round |
| 3. A. how | B. which | C. what | D. that |
| 4. A. real | B. untrue | C. unreal | D. true |
| 5. A. Theirs | B. His | C. Its | D. Their |
| 6. A. with | B. for | C. to | D. by |
| 7. A. fingerprints | B. footprints | C. handprints | D. prints |
| 8. A. go | B. put | C. remain | D. run |
| 9. A. got up | B. gave up | C. set up | D. picked up |
| 10. A. from to | B. back to | C. into | D. onto |

D. WRITING

I. Rewrite the following sentences.

1. “Can you photocopy this report for me?” Tom said to Linda.

→ Tom asked Linda

2. “Don’t wait for me”, she said to her friend.

→ She told her friend

3. My daughter loves to listen to my story before going to bed.

→ My daughter enjoys

4. Jessica was my classmate, but now she studies in another school.

→ Jessica used

5. “You should study harder this semester”, the teacher said.

→ The teacher said

II. Find out the mistakes and correct them.

1. I was play football when she called me.

.....

2. Was you study Math at 5 p.m. yesterday?

.....

3. What was she do while her mother was making lunch?

.....

4. Where did you went last Sunday?

.....

5. They weren't sleep during the meeting last Monday.

.....

6. He got up early and have breakfast with his family yesterday morning.

.....

7. She didn't broke the flower vase. Tom did.

.....

8. Last week my friend and I go to the beach on the bus.

.....

9. While I am listening to music, I heard the doorbell.

.....

10. Peter turn on the TV, but nothing happened.

.....

III. Reorder the words to complete the sentences.

1. Times/ minutes/ Square/ The/ to/ after/ 40/ leaves/ each/ subway.

.....

2. Light/ can/ headaches/ pollution/ make.

.....

3. The/ and/ a/ this/ buried/ five/ early/ trucks/ warehouse/ mudslide/ morning.

.....

4. The/ caused/ of/ nuclear/ power/ has/ leakage/ plant/ pollution/ radioactive.

.....

5. The/ are/ being/ the/ by/ team/ aid/ tsunami/ of/ provided/ first/ victims/ rescue.

.....

ANSWER KEYS**UNIT 1: LEISURE ACTIVITIES****PART 2: EXERCISES****A. PHONETICS**

- I.** 1. D 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. B
6. C 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. C
- II.** 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. C

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. C 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. A
- II.** 1. making 2. Have – ridden 3. go
4. seeing/ to see 5. skateboarding
- III.** 1. doing 2. swimming 3. going
4. playing 5. watching 6. skiing

C. READING

- I.** 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T
- II.** 1. Yes, he does.
2. On starry nights, they lie on the grass, looking at the sky and daring each other to find the Milky Way.
3. I like to live in the countryside because it is quiet and peaceful.
- III.** 1. from 2. is 3. teaching 4. in 5. practice
6. improvement 7. class 8. for 9. other 10. little

D. WRITING

I. In the 1970s, skateboarding suddenly became very popular. At first, skateboarders moved slowly on flat, smooth areas. Then they began to ride quickly. This is called “freestyle” skateboarding. Soon they were skateboarding skillfully up ramps and doing tricks in the air. This is called “ramp” skateboarding. Then they started skateboarding and doing tricks on the street. This was “street-style” skateboarding - a combination of freestyle and ramp. For this, the skateboarders needed protective clothing such as knee and elbow pads and helmets. This allowed them to skateboard safely.

Today skateboarding is still a very popular sport, and there are lots of competitions.

- II.** 1. Your house is bigger than my house.
2. I like listening to music.
3. The white dress is not as expensive as the black one.
Or The white dress is cheaper than the black one.
4. Mary is the most intelligent in my group.
- III.** 1. J 2. B 3. C 4. E 5. H
6. G 7. I 8. A 9. D 10. F

- IV.** 1. at 2. out of 3. between 4. in – beside
5. after 6. under 7. beneath 8. on - above

PART 3. TEST YOURSELF

- I.** 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. D
- II.** 1. f 2. e 3. g 4. b 5. h
6. i 7. j 8. d 9. c 10. a
- III.** 1. friendly 2. orphan 3. humorous 4. extremely 5. beautiful
6. lucky 7. peaceful 8. lovely 9. generous 10. helpful
- IV.** 1. C 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. C 8. D 9. C 10. B
11. C 12. A 13. B 14. D 15. A 16. B 17. A 18. D 19. A 20. C
- V.** 1. safest 2. most likely 3. Older 4. more careful 5. worst
6. more aggressive 7. older 8. faster 9. bigger
10. most interesting 11. worse 12. better 13. more dangerous
- VI.** 1. bookselves 2. bakery 3. actor 4. singer 5. careful
6. leaves 7. businessman 8. nationality 9. pollution 10. Japanese
- VII.** 1. What does she look like?
2. She is not as easy-going as Mai.
3. They prefer the outside to the classroom.
4. I spend most of my time with Hoa.
5. The sun rises in the East.
6. Lan received a letter from her friend yesterday.
7. She is not old enough to get married.
8. She is a nice girl with long hair.
- VIII.** 1. from 2. finish 3. open 4. some 5. and
6. customers 7. the 8. have 9. until 10. they
- IX.** 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. C
6. B 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. B
- X.** 1. People ran a race the length of the stadium.
2. Only Greeks played in the first Games.
3. There is no age limit. People of any age can compete.
4. They must be amateurs.
5. The next Olympic Games is four years after the last one. (in London, England in 2012)

UNIT 2: LIFE IN THE COUNTRYSIDE

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

- I.** 1. B 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. A
 6. B 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. B
- II.** 1. A 2. D 3. B 4. D 5. C

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. more beautifully 2. hotter 3. crazier 4. more slowly
 5. more 6. less 7. worse 8. better
 9. more attractively 10. bigger
- II.** 1. peaceful 2. nomadic 3. collector 4. inconvenient
 5. unsafe 6. friendly 7. healthily 8. traditional
 9. generously 10. soundly
- III.** 1. C 2. D 3. A 4. D 5. C
 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. A 10. C
 11. A 12. C 13. B 14. C 15. A
- IV.** 1. than 2. as 3. more 4. than
 5. more 6. than 7. as 8. than
- V.** 1. best 2. happiest 3. faster 4. more colourful 5. better
 6. good 7. least 8. prettier 9. the better 10. the sicker

C. READING

- I.** 1. is bigger than 2. is smaller than 3. is not as/so large as
 4. is not as/so small as 5. is hotter than 6. is not as/so cold as
 7. is not as/so rainy as 8. is rainier than
- II.** 1. D 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. C
- III.** 1. the most famous 2. the biggest 3. the largest
 4. the most important 5. richer 6. the best
 7. warmer 8. drier 9. the most beautiful 10. the worst
- IV.** 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. D

D. WRITING

- I.** 1. Nam lives on a farm in the country in Vinh Phuc of Viet nam.
 2. In summer, he climbs in the mountains.
 3. In winter, he goes fishing.
 4. He really likes it because it's relaxing and quiet.
 5. He thinks city life is not safe enough to walk around alone.
 6. He also thinks it is too dangerous to cycle on the street because of the heavy traffic,

- II.** 1. Sarah is younger than Tim. 2. Your house is smaller than mine.
 3. Bill is shorter than David. 4. My marks are better than Jack's.
 5. That book is as expensive as this one. 6. My bike is faster than yours.
- III.** 1. Her new house isn't so/ as big as her old one.
 2. Peter is the tallest in my class.
 3. The white dress isn't so/ as expensive as the black one. /The white dress is cheaper than the black one.
 4. According to me, Maths isn't so/ as easy as English/ Maths is more difficult than English.
 5. Mary is the most intelligent in my group.
 6. The Nile is the longest river in the world.
 7. No mountain in the world is higher than Mount Everest.
 8. She is the prettiest girl I have ever met.
 9. The more he works, the more tired he feels.
 10. That computer doesn't work so/ as well as that one.
 11. The bigger the apartment is, the higher the rent is.
 12. The sooner we set off, the sooner we will arrive.
 13. The better the joke is, the louder the laughter is.
 14. The fatter she gets, the more tired she feels.
 15. The older he gets, the less he wants to travel.
 16. The more difficult the games are, the more excited the children are.
 17. The faster people drive, the more accidents happen.
 18. The more I meet him, the more I hate him.
 19. The less time my boss has, the better he works.
 20. The more money he has, the more he wants to spend.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- I.** 1. C 2. B 3. D 4. D

II.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
expensive	more expensive	the most expensive
thick	thicker	the thickest
friendly	more friendly	the most friendly
fine	finer	the finest
thin	thinner	the thinnest
difficult	more difficult	the most difficult
warm	warmer	the warmest
wise	wiser	the wisest
easy	easier	the easiest
wonderful	more wonderful	the most wonderful
sunny	sunnier	the sunniest
fat	fatter	the fattest
long	longer	the longest

- III.** 1. for 2. out 3. of 4. at 5. on 6. in 7. in
- IV.** 1. collection 2. inconvenient 3. skillful
4. unsafe 5. friendly 6. healthily
- V.** 1. D 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. B 6. B
- VI.** 1. playing 2. hunting 3. picked 4. collected - was
5. playing / to play 6. to spend 7. will try 8. to improve
9. underline - to learn 10. move/ to move 11. gets – got 12. being
- VII.** 1. cheaper than 2. more effective than 3. more beautiful than
4. more powerful than 5. taller than 6. heavier than
7. longer than 8. easier than 9. more comfortable than
10. more interesting than
- VIII.** 1. mountain 2. stories 3. with 4. life
5. any 6. riding 7. to 8. visitors
- IX.** 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F 6. T
- X.** 1. It is quite simple to cook Thang Co.
2. Do you like to live in the big city or the countryside?
3. The traffic is becoming better.
4. Life in the country is changing better.
5. Mr. Hung is arriving in Ho Chi Minh city tonight.
6. I and my uncle went to the countryside last Sunday.
7. It is getting dark so we should go home.
8. I am visiting my grandfather on Saturday.
- XI.** 1. It's colder today than it was yesterday.
2. It takes more time to travel by train than by car.
3. We were busier at work today than usual.
4. Jane's sister doesn't cook as well as Jane.
5. Nobody in this team plays football as well as Tom./ Nobody in this team plays football better than Tom.

UNIT 3: PEOPLES OF VIETNAM

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

- I.** 1. D 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. B
- II.** 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. A

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. the person 2. the only cinema 3. a Thames barge
4. the British Museum 5. church 6. a milk jug
7. The Prime Minister 8. Computer 9. an open-air theatre

- | | | | | | | |
|-------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|-------------|-------|-------|
| | 10. the a thousand pounds | 11. under the impression | 12. a hurry | | | |
| | 13. at a profit | 14. on the whole | 15. on the average | | | |
| | 16. in pain | 17. out of danger | 18. in the way | | | |
| | 19. the cross- channel ferry | 20. the back of my neck | | | | |
| II. | 1. the | 2. a | 3. the | 4. the | 5. a | |
| | 6. the | 7. the | 8. a - the | 9. An – the | | |
| III. | 1. C | 2. A | 3. D | 4. B | 5. A | 6. B |
| | 7. B | 8. C | 9. D | 10. C | 11. B | 12. C |
| | 13. D | 14. A | 15. C | 16. B | 17. D | 18. A |

C. READING

- | | | | | | |
|-------------|------------|------------|-----------|----------|------|
| I. | 1. C | 2. D | 3. D | 4. A | 5. C |
| II. | 1. A | 2. B | 3. C | 4. A | |
| | 5. D | 6. D | 7. C | 8. B | |
| III. | 1. located | 2. history | 3. opened | 4. year | |
| | 5. built | 6. that | 7. houses | 8. which | |

D. WRITING

- | | | | | | |
|-----------|------------|-----------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| I. | 1. on | 2. in | 3. down | 4. arrived | 5. nobody |
| | 6. tired | 7. into | 8. sky | 9. stopped | 10. start |
| | 11. looked | 12. above | 13. decided | 14. shouted | 15. mountain |
- II.**
1. My work isn't as good as yours.
 2. Nobody is older than Dick in the family.
 3. If she didn't lose the key, she could get into the house.
 4. They are not old enough to join the army.
 5. If you invite her, she will come.
 6. The picture is too heavy to hang on the wall.
 7. They were not only tired but also hungry.
 8. Finishing their work, they went home.
 9. If she did not go out in the rain, she would not get wet.
 10. Tom is not strong enough to lift the table.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- | | | | | | |
|-------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------|-------------|-------|
| I. | 1. A | 2. D | 3. A | 4. A | |
| II. | 1. unhealthily | 2. multicultural | 3. mountainous | 4. communal | |
| | 5. socialise | 6. addicted | 7. trainer | 8. envious | |
| | 9. nomads | 10. traditionally | | | |
| III. | 1. A | 2. C | 3. A | 4. B | 5. B |
| | 6. A | 7. B | 8. A | 9. B | 10. A |
| | 11. D | 12. B | 13. C | 14. A | 15. B |
| | 16. B | 17. C | 18. C | 19. B | 20. D |

- IV.** 1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. C
- V.** 1. A 2. D 3. B 4. A
5. A 6. D 7. C 8. C
6. A 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. A
- VI.** 1. The 2. a 3. The 4. The 5. an
6. the 7. the 8. the 9. the 10. the
- VII.** 1. to 2. for 3. for 4. in 5. from
6. in 7. from 8. at 9. in 10. above
- VIII.** 1. The Cham ethnic group has a population about 100,000.
2. They live mostly on the coast between Ninh Thuan and Binh Thuan Provinces or on the Cambodian border around Chau Doc.
3. The Cham have a tradition of wet rice cultivation.
4. Handicraft are fairly well-developed, especially silkworm textiles and handmade pottery wares.
5. Both men and women wear long-piece sarongs or cloth wrappers.
6. Main colour of their daily dress is cotton white.
7. Chief means of transporting good and farm produce is black-basket.
8. Most important festival, called *Bon Kate* is held near the Cham towers in the tenth month of the Lunar year.
- IX.** 1. The chickens were fed (by me) this morning.
2. It is such a difficult question that all the students cannot answer it.
3. Tom and Mary have got married for 5 years.
4. Because the film was so boring, I fell asleep.
5. In spite of the bad weather, it did not delay the traffic.
6. A new bridge was built over the river (by them).
7. If you took exercise, you would feel healthy.
8. I haven't written to my pen pal for two months.
9. In spite of being strong, he can't move that stone.
10. She asked me where my brother works.

UNIT 4: OUR CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

- I.** 1. B 2. C 3. D 4. C 5. B
6. C 7. A 8. D 9. C 10. B
- II.** 1. D 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. B

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. permitted 2. necessity 3. obligation 4. hostess 5. strictly
6. traditional 7. social 8. oblige 9. moral 10. beauty

- II.** 1. don't have to 2. should 3. don't have to 4. shouldn't 5. should
6. should 7. should 8. have to 9. should 10. have to
- III.** 1. A 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. C
6. B 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. D
11. D 12. B 13. A 14. C 15. C

C. READING

- I.** 1. A 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. C
- II.** 1. arrange 2. more 3. responsible
4. look 5. after 6. by
7. importance 8. there 9. because
10. ancestors
- III.** 1. D 2. C 3. A 4. B
5. D 6. C 7. B 8. A

D. WRITING

- I.** 1. You shouldn't park 2. should I cook 3. You should wear
4. You shouldn't smoke 5. We should arrive 6. Should I send
7. I should apply 8. I should write 9. I shouldn't eat
10. We should complain 11. I should buy
- II.** 1. You should wear a warm coat. 2. I think you should leave early.
3. You should take more exercise. 4. I think you should read a lot.
5. You should do that. 6. I think you should ride a bike.
7. I think you should buy a dog.
- III.** 1. don't → doesn't 2. went → go
3. lives → live 4. hasn't → doesn't have
5. enough strong → strong enough 6. a full of flowers garden → a garden full of
7. no → aren't 8. for → to
9. greens → green 10. is → are
11. worked → working 12. a → an
13. tickets → ticket 14. alway → always
15. from → to 16. whose → who
17. many → often 18. many → much
19. gives → give 20. so → soon

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- I.** 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. A
- II.** 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. C
- III.** 1. This switch should not be touched.
2. You shouldn't put so much salt in the soup.
3. You shouldn't drink so much alcohol.

15. B 16. A 17. B 18. B 19. B 20. A 21. C
 22. B 23. B 24. D 25. B 26. B 27. A 28. B
- III.** 1. be 2. was having 3. take 4. comment 5. lived/ would have
 6. have learnt (have been learning) 7. wouldn't buy
 8. did (the children) see 9. playing 10. are waiting

C. READING

- I.** 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. D 6. C 7. A 8. C
- II.** 1. celebrate 2. traditional 3. spring 4. Therefore
 5. kept 6. Because 7. However 8. served
- III.** 1. No, it isn't.
 2. Some weeks before the New Year, they dean their houses and paint the walls.
 3. They visit their neighbors, friends and relatives.
 4. Many different kinds of dishes are served.
- IV.** 1. falls/ is 2. meant 3. their 4. have/ get 5. studies
 6. forget 7. of 8. give/ present 9. comparison 10. atmosphere

D. WRITING

- I.** 1. mustn't to → must 2. has to → have to
 3. is having → was having 4. while → because
- II.** 1. Lang Lieu couldn't buy any special food, because he was very poor.
 2. During Tet, Vietnamese people buy all kinds of sweets, so they make Chung cakes as well.
 3. The Hung King Temple Festival was a local festival; however, it has become a public holiday in Viet Nam since 2007.
 4. At the Mid-Autumn Festival, kids can sing, dance, and enjoy mooncakes; therefore, every child likes it very much.
 5. We cannot swim in this part of the river because the water is highly polluted
 6. Mr. Minh is admired since he dedicates all his life to protecting environment.
 7. Give me a ring when you hear some news.
 8. I'll do my homework after the TV program ends.
 9. I'll have a bath before I go to work.
 10. She'll visit friends while she's in Paris.
- III.** 1. On New Year's Eve, the Vietnamese put fruits on the altar, and they also arrange watermelon and traditional cakes such as Chung cakes.
 2. While many people go to pagodas or churches on New Year's Day to pray for the coming year, many others remain in their home in front of the altar to welcome the ancestors through prayer.
 3. Although people from Western countries do not follow ancestor worship, ancestor worship is considered a type of religious practices in some Asian countries.

4. Because Xoan singing is still in the memory of folk artists in Phu Tho Province, they always try their best to hand down offspring the old style of singing in the activities of the clubs.
5. The Giong Festival is held from the 6th to the 12th of the 4th lunar month in several venues around Ha Noi.
6. The festival commemorates Saint Giong who defeated the An.
7. It is also an opportunity to hope for abundant harvests and happy lives and express patriotism.
8. During the festival, villagers do the statue bathing, processions of bamboo flowers to Soc Temple.
9. The festival also provides many entertaining activities, including folk games and traditional singing performances.
10. The festival has recognized by UNESCO as an intangible cultural heritage of mankind.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- | | | | | | |
|-------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| I. | 1. A | 2. B | 3. C | 4. D | 5. D |
| II. | 1. A | 2. A | 3. A | 4. B | 5. D |
| | 6. A | 7. A | 8. A | 9. D | 10. A |
| | 11. D | 12. B | 13. C | 14. B | 15. A |
| | 16. A | 17. B | 18. A | 19. C | 20. A |
| III. | 1. C | 2. C | 3. B | 4. A | 5. C |
| IV. | 1. A | 2. B | 3. C | 4. A | 5. D |
| V. | 1. A | 2. B | 3. A | 4. D | 5. C |
| VI. | 1. D | 2. B | 3. C | 4. A | 5. A |
| | 6. B | 7. C | 8. C | 9. D | 10. A |
- VII.**
1. The building where he lives is very old.
 2. I will tell you something which you didn't know before.
 3. I'll never forget the day when I met you.
 4. Although it was cold, Tom still went swimming.
 5. John is very sad because he fails the exam.
 6. He never left the house where he had been born.
 7. I met the man who works in a bank.
 8. Here are the letters which arrived this morning.
 9. Although my grandfather is very old, he is still young at heart.
 10. Tom gets a lot of money because he works hard.

VIII.

1. Nha Trang Sea Festival takes place every two years for a week in around June in Nha Trang City, Khanh Hoa Province.
2. This is a colorful and dynamic sea festival which honors natural beauty of Nha Trang – the charming city overlooking the sea.
3. The first Nha Trang Sea Festival was held in 2003 when Nha Trang Beach was proclaimed as a member of the Most Beautiful Bays in the World Club.

4. Coming to Nha Trang at the time of festival, visitors will be able to take part in various cultural and recreational events.
5. First of all is an abundant opening ceremony by Vietnamese and international art groups.
6. Besides, many interesting activities also take place during the festival like seafood competition, wine festival, beach volleyball, art kite flying festival, underwater group wedding, etc.
7. The festival is also a great chance for tourists to know more about Viet Nam through special events.
8. Nha Trang Sea Festival will definitely give you an unforgettable impression about Viet Nam's charming beauty as well as time-honored traditional values.

UNIT 6: FOLK TALES

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

- | | | | | | |
|------------|------|------|------|------|------|
| I. | 1. C | 2. B | 3. C | 4. A | 5. D |
| II. | 1. A | 2. D | 3. C | 4. B | 5. C |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|---------|------|------|------|
| I. | 1. saw | 2. were you doing | 3. didn't visit | 4. rained | | | | |
| | 5. was reading | 6. ate | 7. were running | 8. Did you find | | | | |
| | 9. did she dance | 10. were watching | | | | | | |
| II. | 1. C | 2. A | 3. A | 4. B | 5. B | 6. A | 7. A | 8. A |
| III. | 1. playing | 2. Were you studying | 3. doing | 4. go | | | | |
| | 5. sleeping | 6. had | 7. break | 8. went | | | | |
| | 9. was | 10. turned | | | | | | |
| IV. | 1. went | 2. swam | 3. was drinking | 4. saw | 5. was | | | |
| | 6. beat | 7. asked | 8. told | 9. stayed | 10. had | | | |
| V. | 1. taught/ to ride/ was | | 2. do - go/ drives | 3. are going to | | | | |
| | 4. Did you use to play/ lived | | 5. spent/ repairing | | | | | |
| VI. | 1. used to live – went | | 2. used to earn – lost | | | | | |
| | 3. joined – didn't use to like | | 4. Did (you) use to travel – became | | | | | |
| | 5. used to work – dropped | | 6. used to see – had | | | | | |
| | 7. used to play – broke | | 8. used to drive – had | | | | | |
| | 9. used to have – moved | | | | | | | |

C. READING

- | | | | |
|------------|---|----------------|--------------------|
| I. | 1. In my opinion | 2. also | 3. I think |
| | 4. Besides | 5. In addition | 6. As I have noted |
| II. | 1. It is located in Duong Lam commune at a 45 km distance from Hanoi. | | |
| | 2. Phung Hung and Ngo Quyen were the two kings whose birthplace is Duong Lam Village. | | |

3. It is typical for villages in the midlands in the North of Vietnam.

4. There are still nearly old 200 houses.

- | | | | | |
|-------------|---------|------------|------------|--------------|
| III. | 1. was | 2. lived | 3. had | 4. slept |
| | 5. had | 6. were | 7. loved | 8. came |
| | 9. said | 10. washed | 11. ironed | 12. scrubbed |
| | 13. saw | 14. tore | 15. ran | 16. said |

D. WRITING

I. THE STORY OF A TOWN

Brighton is the largest seaside resort in the south-east of England.

At first the town was a fishing village and did not become popular until about 1800. Rich people began to visit Brighton in large numbers and when King George IV decided to build a house there, it became very fashionable. The King continued to visit it until 1827, but Queen Victoria did not like the house.

It is open to the public every day and there is a special exhibition there in the summer.

Brighton offers all kinds of entertainment, from concerts and plays in the theatre to local attractions like the Aquarium.

The area of old houses known as The Lanes is a very attractive shopping centre, where visitors can buy souvenirs and antiques. The houses were once lived in by fishermen but have now been converted into shops. Not far from The Lanes is a modern shopping centre with licensed restaurants and tables outdoors where you can enjoy a drink in good weather.

Brighton is within easy reach of London and has been a popular day out for Londoners for many years.

II. 1. The weather in India is rather hot all year round, but you shouldn't wear shorts or sleeveless shirts when visiting a pagoda.

2. Lim Festival is the festival of "Quan Ho" singing; moreover, it is also space for various folk games.

3. People believe that the first person who visits their home during Tet holiday may determine their fortune for the whole year; however, the person who sweeps the floor on the first three days of this festive occasion might sweep away the wealth.

4. Lion dances are held when opening a new company, or connecting an activity because these dances are believed to bring good luck and prosperity and drive away evil.

5. If you come and visit a Chinese family, you should bear in mind not to give an odd number of presents because odd numbers are considered unlucky in China.

III. 1. Coffee is more expensive than tea.

2. I enjoy listening to music.

3. The black car is not as expensive as the red car.

(Or) The black car is cheaper than the red car.

4. Mary is the most intelligent in my group.

5. The song "Chung ta khong thuoc ve nhau" is performed very beautifully by Son Tung M-TP.

6. A duck swims more slowly than a fish. (A duck can't swim as fast as a fish.)

7. Your house is smaller than /isn't as big as my house.

8. I have lived in Ha Noi for 5 years.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- I.** 1. D 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. D 7. C 8. A 9. D 10. C
- II.** 1. A 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. D 6. C 7. D 8. D 9. A 10. A
11. B 12. C 13. A 14. B 15. B 16. C 17. B 18. A 19. D 20. B
- III.** 1. at 2. on 3. at 4. (X) 5. (X)
6. (X) 7. (X) 8. in 9. (X) 10. in
- IV.** 1. “aged”
2. he did not have anyone else to look after him.(/ he was an orphan)
3. making and selling buns and cakes
4. go round the village to sell cakes
5. his grandmother was not strong enough to work/ his grandmother fell ill.
- V.** 1. ago 2. into 3. The 4. middle 5. on
6. away 7. into 8. with 9. it 10. could
11. next 12. send 13. by 14. long 15. rescued
- VI.** 1. launched 2. Panama Canal 3. around Cape Horn
4. in 1881 5. problems
- VII.** 1. the 2. in 3. for 4. who 5. whose
6. pay 7. people 8. about 9. post-offices 10. with
- VIII.** 1. I began learning English three years ago.
2. I did four exercises last night.
3. He telephoned his wife at two o’clock.
4. Mr. Green was in Viet Nam for ten years.
5. I got up this morning at half past five.
6. I had bread and omelets had for breakfast this morning.
7. I left home at six o’clock.
8. I went to school this morning by bicycle.
9. I watched television after my homework last night.
10. I went to bed at ten o’clock last night.
- IX.** 1. on 2. in 3. on/ at 4. in 5. at 6. On
7. at 8. at/ in 9. on 10. in 11. before 12. after
- X.** 1. We were having dinner while they were listening to the radio.
2. The fire started when she was sleeping.
3. What were you doing when it began to rain?
4. When the farmer started whistling, he was ploughing the field.
5. What were they doing when you came?
6. What was happening when she came?
7. The man came in when she was reading a book.
8. The volcano erupted when they were working in the field.
9. The lava hit the town when the ship was leaving the harbor.
10. Someone hit the headmaster on the head when he was going to his car.

MIDDLE TERM TEST

A. PHONETICS

- I.** 1. D 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. B
 6. C 7. A 8. A 9. A 10. D
 11. D 12. B 13. C 14. C 15. C

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. C 2. B 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. B
II. 1. doing 2. writing 3. taking 4. playing 5. collecting
 6. riding 7. watching 8. washing 9. listening 10. eating
III. 1. working 2. to visit 3. make 4. helping 5. taking
 6. doing 7. play 8. to watch 9. socializing 10. surfing
IV. 1. didn't disturb 2. went 3. didn't sleep 4. didn't ate 5. wasn't
 6. laughed 7. flied 8. cost 9. didn't have 10. were
V. 1. used to smoke 2. used to 3. didn't use to drink 4. used to have
 5. didn't use to like 6. used to live 7. used to play 8. didn't use to study
VI. 1. as pretty 2. more expensive 3. more important 4. best
 5. happier 6. most international 7. stronger 8. more comfortable
 9. better 10. most delightful 11. most careful 12. more interesting
 13. more precious 14. warmer 15. so good 16. more pleasant
 17. the highest 18. stronger 19. fatter 20. the largest

C. READING

- I.** 1. in 2. nice 3. took 4. on 5. drove
 6. stopped 7. afternoon 8. a 9. get 10. late
II. 1. It exists in the Central Highlands of Viet Nam.
 2. It is held once a year / annually.
 3. They give gong performances, highlighting the gong culture of their own province.
 4. No, they aren't.
 5. No, it isn't.
III. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F
 6. T 7. F 8. T 9. T 10. T
IV. 1. fifteen 2. dawn 3. pump out 4. find the shore 5. wading
V. 1. It was founded on March 26th, 1931.
 2. It builds characters.
 3. It encourages good citizenship and personal fitness.
 4. It is named "Green Sunday" because it gives more green colors to the city and is done on Sunday.
 5. The recycling helps people save natural resources.

- VI.** 1. visitor 2. cousin 3. duck 4. wife 5. soup
6. friend 7. food 8. fourth 9. warm 10. duck

D. WRITING

- I.** 1. True 2. would live → lived 3. used to going → used to go
4. True 5. were noticing → noticed 6. True
7. were realising → realized 8. snowed → was snowing
9. were skidding → skidded 10. True
- II.** 1. Dogs can swim better than cats.
2. Minh really enjoys hanging out with friends.
3. It is very interesting to play beach games.
4. He spends all his free time looking after his garden.
- III.** 1. They used to start these machines by hand.
2. He used to get up late.
3. I used to listen to the radio.
4. They used to have a dog.
5. My brother used to serve in the army.
6. Barbara used to be keen on travel.
7. He used to do morning exercise in the park when he was young.
8. The man used to spend his holiday in the mountain when he was young.
9. Before he had the car, he used to go to work by bike.
10. I used to get up early when I was young.

UNIT 7: POLLUTION

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

- I.** 1. D 2. D 3. D 4. B 5. C
II. 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. D

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. go 2. eats 3. wouldn't do/ were 4. takes
5. did/ wouldn't worry 6. will....do 7. were /would go
8. passed 9. will be 10. went 11. won't go
12. tries 13. spoke 14. finish/ will go 15. see/ ask
- II.** 1. would you choose 2. gets 3. comes 4. would call
5. will sit 6. don't talk 7. will you do 8. had read
9. had asked 10. had 11. will go 12. would you do
13. run 14. won't be 15. would have understand
16. comes 17. wouldn't have 18. had worn 19. leaves
20. would have had

- III.** 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. A
 6. A 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. C
 11. B 12. C 13. C 14. A 15. B
 16. D 17. C 18. B 19. A 20. C
 21. C 22. A 23. B 24. A 25. B
- IV.** 1. polluted 2. unable 3. environmental 4. Natural
 5. harmful 6. contaminated 7. illustration 8. poisonous
- V.** 1. to 2. away 3. with 4. to 5. into

C. READING

- I.** 1. refers 2. poisons 3. too 4. in 5. example/ instance
 6. noise 7. is 8. problems 9. water 10. even
- II.** 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T 6. F
- III.** 1. A 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. B 6. D 7. C 8. B

D. WRITING

- I.** 1. Noise pollution is any loud sounds that are either harmful or annoying to humans and animals.
 2. Generally, noise is produced by household appliances, big trucks, vehicles and motorbikes on the road, planes and helicopters flying over cities, loud speakers, etc.
 3. Noise pollution can cause stress, illness, hearing loss, sleep loss and lost productivity.
 4. Health effects of noise include anxiety, stress, headaches, irritability and nervousness.
 5. Noise-producing industries, airports, bus terminals should be located far from living places.
 6. The officials must check the misuse of loudspeakers, outdoor parties and discos, as well as public announcement systems.
- II.** 1. The building where he lives is very old.
 2. I will tell you something which you didn't know before.
 3. I'll never forget the day when I met you.
 4. Although it was cold, Tom still went swimming.
 5. John is very sad because he fails the exam.
 6. He never left the house where he had been born.
 7. I met the man who works in a bank.
 8. Here are the letters which arrived this morning.
 9. Although my grandfather is very old, he is still young at heart.
 10. Tom gets a lot of money because he works hard.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- I.** 1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. A
- II.** 1. will have 2. find 3. had fed 4. will have
 5. looked 6. will happen 7. press 8. had had

9. will you stay 10. swim 11. tell 12. don't change
 13. wouldn't have bought 14. hung 15. would be
 16. would have brought 17. would have been
 18. wouldn't have printed 19. wouldn't buy 20. would arrive
- III.** 1. unable 2. environmental 3. contaminated 4. Industrial
 5. Natural 6. harmful 7. contaminated 8. polluted
 9. death 10. Polluted 11. pollutants 12. difficulty
- IV.** 1. A 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. D
- V.** 1. air pollution 2. factories 3. Yes, it can
 4. The gases from the exhausts of cars.
 5. Because the gases in the atmosphere continue to increase.
- VI.** 1. A 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. C
- VII.** 1. The major cause of water pollution in Vietnam is the weakness in industrial wastewater management.
 2. Many factories use fresh water to carry away waste from their plants into canals, rivers, and lakes.
 3. Most of them do not have a wastewater treatment system.
 4. Industrial waste water is directly discharged into canals, lakes, ponds, and rivers, causing serious pollution of surface water.
 5. For example, in 2008, Vedan factory, a sodium glutamate plant, released their untreated industrial wastewater into the Thi Vai River and caused tons of fish and ducks in the river to die.
 6. Another cause of water pollution in Vietnam is the lack of awareness among citizens.
 7. Every day people generate a lot of garbage, and they throw it directly into canals, river, and ponds.
 8. They collect water from these sources to do their laundry, wash dishes, and bathe, and then they throw the dirty water that contain detergent and shampoo directly into them.

UNIT 8: ENGLISH SPEAKING COUNTRIES

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

- I.** 1. A 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. C
II. 1. A 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. C

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. themselves 2. Would 3. between 4. to sing 5. outside
 6. enough 7. play 8. have to 9. well 10. perfectly
 11. fast 12. careful – carefully 13. nervous 14. fluently
 15. badly 16. angrily 17. happy 18. hard 19. good
 20. well 21. three times 22. try

- II.** 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B
6. A 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. D
- III.** 1. has adopted 2. have become 3. is occurring 4. has been
5. is 6. has 7. takes 8. has welcomed

C. READING

- I.** 1. They live in the desert.
2. It stores the fat in its hump.
3. Because fat all over an animal's body keeps the animal warm. Camels live in the desert. They do not want to be warm during the day.
4. It stores the heat in its body because the nights are cool.
5. Because the winters are cold in Central Asia.
- II.** 1. in 2. of 3. the 4. language 5. and 6. countries 7. at
- III.** 1. English
2. Because it is an effective medium of international communication.
3. The written English, because it's not phonetically-based./ it is not systematically phonetic
4. The UK, the USA, and Australia
5. Because China has the largest population in the world.

D. WRITING

- I.** 1. Sydney is not the capital of Australia, but Canberra is.
2. The Maori are native people in the North Island of New Zealand.
3. The National Children's Museum in Washington D.C. opens at 10.00 a.m.
4. The Golden Gate Bridge is an iconic monument of San Francisco.
5. Malaysia has considered English as its official language for years.
- II.** 1. official 2. began/ started 3. population 4. ability
5. written 6. in 7. Therefore 8. students

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- I.** 1. C 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. A
- II.** 1. Legendary 2. refugees 3. spectacular 4. iconic 5. Irish
6. speakers 7. unofficial 8. absolutely 9. exposed 10. pollutants
- III.** 1. has become 2. have made 3. has become 4. shares 5. has won
6. are shaking 7. has 8. are 9. has been 10. use/ feel
- IV.**
1. Asking "where is everybody?" 2. Two or three
3. Summer 4. eight weeks
5. Class attendance 6. Watching soccer on TV
7. Participles as adjectives.
- V.** 1. A 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. D 9. B 10. C

UNIT 9: NATURAL DISASTERS

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

- I.** 1. C 2. D 3. C 4. D 5. A
- II.** 1. B 2. A 3. A 4. D 5. C

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. C 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. D
6. B 7. A 8. C 9. D 10. C
11. D 12. C 13. C 14. B 15. C
16. B 17. D 18. D 19. A 20. C
- II.** 1. came/had finished 2. had met 3. went/ had read
4. hadn't worn 5. had started 6. had done/ went
7. had lived/ moved 8. told/ had learned 9. had worked/ retired
10. got/ had already started 11. came/ had changed 12. had grown
13. came/ had waited 14. listened/ had done 15. had gone/ went

C. READING

- I.** 1. D 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B
6. B 7. C 8. D 9. A 10. B
- I.** 1. C 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. D
6. A 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. B 11. B
- III** 1. has 2. is 3. lasts 4. warmer 5. temperature
6. Fishermen/ People 7. natural 8. happens/ occurs
9. but 10. understand

D. WRITING

- I.** 1. After David had gone home, we arrived.
2. Before we took a look around the shops, we had had lunch.
3. When we got out of the office, the light had gone out.
4. By the time we started our work, she had explain everything clearly.
5. Before my mother came home, my father had watered all the plants in the garden.
- II.** 1. came - left 2. got up - had left 3. had finished - went
4. had done - come 5. met - had divorced 6. hadn't bought - would had had
- III.** 1. Tea can't be made with cold water.
2. All the workers of the plant were being instructed by the chief.
3. Some of my books have been taken away.
4. The meeting will be held before May Day.
5. The engine of the car has to be repaired.

6. The window was broken and some pictures were taken away by the boy.
7. A lot of money is spent on advertising everyday.
8. This room may be used for the classroom.
9. A story is going to be told by the teacher.
10. The cake is being cut with a sharp knife by Mary.
11. The woman with a red hat was looked at by the children.
12. The victims have been provided with food and clothing.
13. The lesson is explained by the teacher.
14. The food is being cooked in the kitchen by Mrs Green.
15. The patients were examined by the doctor.
16. That noise was made by these boys.
17. English is spoken all over the world.
18. He was given the money back last Sunday.
19. These exercises can't be done quickly.
20. The report had been finished by noon.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|-----------|------------------|------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| I. | 1. A | 2. A | 3. D | 4. B | 5. C | | | | | |
| II. | 1. A | 2. D | 3. B | 4. C | 5. B | | | | | |
| III. | 1. B | 2. B | 3. B | 4. D | 5. A | 6. B | 7. C | 8. A | 9. C | 10. B |
| | 11. A | 12. D | 13. D | 14. A | 15. A | 16. C | 17. A | 18. B | 19. D | 20. A |
| IV. | 1. A | 2. D | 3. B | 4. C | 5. A | | | | | |
| V. | 1. A | 2. B | 3. C | 4. A | 5. D | 6. B | 7. D | 8. C | 9. A | 10. D |
| VI. | 1. D | 2. D | 3. C | 4. A | 5. B | | | | | |
| VII. | 1. harmful | 2. With | 3. increasing | 4. major | | | | | | |
| | 5. successful | 6. effect | 7. communicative | 8. poisons | | | | | | |

VIII. The large movement of the earth under the water causes a very large and powerful tsunami. That tsunami was called the Asian Tsunami in the most of the world. It was called the Boxing Day Tsunami in England, Australia, South Africa and Canada because it happened on the holiday which they call Boxing Day. The tsunami caused a lot of damage to countries such as the Philippines, Thailand, Indonesia and Sri Lanka.

Waves as high as 30 meters killed many people and damaged or destroyed a lot of buildings and other property. Over 225,000 people died or they were not found after the tsunami. The waves travelled as far away as South Africa (8,000 kilometers) where as many as 8 people died because of high water caused by the waves. Because of how much damage was caused and the number of people the earthquake affected, over \$7 billion was donated to help the survivors and rebuild the areas damaged.

UNIT 10: COMMUNICATION

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

- I.** 1. A 2. D 3. C 4. B 5. A
II. 1. A 2. C 3. C 4. D 5. B

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. spectacles 2. collapsed 3. mudslide 4. Debris
 5. permanent 6. thermal 7. Radioactive 8. symbolise
II. 1. A 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. D 10. C
 11. A 12. A 13. B 14. A 15. C 16. B 17. D 18. A 19. B 20. D

C. READING

- I.** 1. D 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. D
II. 1. A 2. B 3. C 4. D
 5. B 6. A 7. C 8. D
III. 1. was 2. called 3. in 4. which 5. started/ began
 6. whether/ if 7. an 8. it 9. than 10. to

D. WRITING

- I.** 1. I saw him get in through the window.
 2. She had worked so hard that she made herself sick.
 3. Though the traffic was bad, I arrived on time.
 4. We were so late that we missed the first act of play.
 5. They're the birds that I fed this morning.
 6. I wish I knew more English words.
 7. She asked me if/whether I had many friends.
 8. If we had a lot of money, we would buy a lot of new books.
 9. It is not easy to learn English
 10. John invited Sarah to come to his birthday party.
II. 1. The film was so boring that she decided to go home early.
 2. It is such a difficult question that all the students can't answer it.
 3. Mr. Brown wants to use solar energy but he does not have enough money to buy necessary equipment.
 4. By the time Shakespeare died in 1616, he had written more than 37 plays.
 5. Since Douglas fell off his bicycle last week, he has had to use crutches to walk.
 6. I (had) turned off the lights before I left the room.
 7. As soon as the other passengers get on the bus soon, we'll leave.
 8. Whenever Susan feels nervous, she chews her nails.

9. The frying pan caught on fire while I was making dinner.
10. I won't return my book to the library until I have finished my research project.

- III.**
1. I am having a great time here in England.
 2. I have been here for three months and my university term started two months ago.
 3. I live in a dormitory with some foreign students.
 4. They come from the different parts in the world.
 5. They are very friendly and pleasant and their English is much better than mine.
 6. I practice speaking English with them every day.
 7. Now I am making a good progress.
 8. My pronunciation is much better and I understand almost everything.
 9. I hope my English will considerably improve at the end of the course.
 10. Write to me soon.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- I.**
- | | | | |
|--------------|----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. invisible | 2. interactive | 3. immediately | 4. indirectly |
| 5. overslept | 6. instantly | 7. non-verbally | 8. communicative |
- II.**
- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. A | 2. C | 3. D | 4. A | 5. C |
| 6. A | 7. B | 8. A | 9. B | 10. A |
| 11. A | 12. A | 13. D | 14. A | 15. D |
| 16. A | 17. B | 18. B | 19. A | 20. A |
- III.**
1. The purpose of newspapers to inform the public of political, social, economic and entertainment happenings, among other things.
 2. There are 3 types of newspapers. They are daily newspapers, weekly newspapers and special-interest newspapers.
 3. Daily newspapers often have sections for news, sports, arts, and entertainment, business, and classified advertising.
 4. Weekly newspapers focus on news of interest to readers in a smaller area than that of a daily paper.
 5. Special-interest newspapers cover news of interest to a particular group of readers.
 6. Electronic newspapers are cheap up-to-date, and convenient for most readers in the world.
- IV.**
1. Because the sender paid for the letter to travel in his or her own country, then the person in the other country paid for that part of the trip. If a letter crossed several countries, the problem was worse.
 2. Because it makes the process of delivering letter simple. Only the senders have to pay for the letters.
 3. Other countries started making their own postage stamps very quickly.
 4. It takes care of any international mail problems.
 5. Because they were the first stamps in the world.
- V.**
1. Lan is choosing a song to set ringback tone for her phone.
 2. She kept on glancing at her watch in order to avoid being late.
 3. Nga will be reading the message board at 8.00 a.m tomorrow.

4. Peter has received their mail for ages, but he hasn't replied it yet.
 5. Snail mail is not favoured much because it is slower than email.

UNIT 11: SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

- I.** 1. A 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. D
 6. A 7. A 8. B 9. D 10. C
II. 1. C 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. C

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. will play 2. am waiting 3. Are you doing
 4. will go 5. are working 6. am calling
II. 1. D 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. A
 6. C 7. D 8. B 9. C 10. B
III. 1. will have implanted 2. will be taking 3. will become
 4. will create 5. will have built 6. will connect
 7. will design 8. will have run 9. will help
 10. am I going to do

C. READING

- I.** 1. one 2. means 3. pictures 4. around/ all 5. with
 6. set 7. house/room/flat 8. make 9. Through 10. home
II. 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. D
 6. A 7. C 8. D 9. B 10. C
III. 1. A 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. B

D. WRITING

- I.** 1. Tom said that he wanted to buy a pocket calculator for his father.
 2. She said that she had once spent a summer in that village.
 3. The nurse told doctor that the patient in that room hadn't obeyed his orders.
 4. They told me that I had taught them English the previous year.
 5. Mr. Brown said that their trip had cost them two thousand dollars.
 6. He told her that she couldn't find his hat anywhere in that room.
 7. My father told them that his secretary was going to finish that job.
 8. They said that they couldn't meet her there either that day or the next day.
 9. My mother said that she thought it wouldn't rain the following day.
 10. He told John that his car had been stolen.
 11. They said that the river was rising early that year.

12. He said that he would expect her to come soon.
13. Our teacher said that World War II had broken out in 1939.
14. The students said that they would be sitting for their next exam the next Monday.
15. He said that he was going to finish that work.

II. Human beings have gained much specific advancement recently. There are a series of inventions that have brought human conveniences in a modern life. Television sets as a good example that certainly influences on our life in communication and entertainment. However, TV also causes some bad effects of time-consuming and health problems.

In the first place, television helps people in the ways of communicating to each other and entertaining their life. Thanks to the appearance TV, people can keep up-to-date with the world. What our life will be if we do not have a TV at home. Because TV is a cheap and available tool to provide us daily information. Also, watching TV is a valuable kind of entertainment that helps people relax after working hard or suffering from a busy life. Last but not least, TV has changed husband's behavior in connecting to each other.

Beside of good advantages of TV, watching TV may cause some disorders in health and working time as well. Some people spend long hours in front of a TV set, they may neglect then work or duty in taking care of their family members. And young people may work less effectively and addicted to watching TV lead to passiveness and laziness.

In conclusion, everything has two sides and TV is optional. It is obvious that TV benefits our life in making people become friendly and close. I totally agree that TV is a great invention and we have to be aware of its good points by using it suitably.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- | | | | | | |
|-------------|------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------|------------------------|---------------|
| I. | 1. A | 2. B | 3. C | 4. A | 5. D |
| II. | 1. C | 2. B | 3. C | 4. D | 5. D |
| | 6. A | 7. C | 8. D | 9. C | 10. B |
| III. | 1. dangerous | 2. production | | 3. industrial/ medical | |
| | 4. technological | 5. ability | | 6. development | |
| | 7. safety/ risky | 8. scientist/ researcher/ scientific | | | |
| | 9. admirer | 10. conservationist | | | |
| IV. | 1. are | 2. for | 3. consideration | 4. to/with | 5. first |
| | 6. by | 7. number | 8. developed | 9. gets | 10. programme |
| V. | 1. C | 2. A | 3. B | 4. A | 5. B |
| | 6. C | 7. D | 8. D | 9. A | 10. D |
| VI. | 1. sold | 2. smaller | 3. many | 4. which | 5. where |
| | 6. what | 7. make | 8. much | 9. ago | 10. which |

UNIT 12: LIFE ON OTHER PLANETS

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

- I.** 1. D 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. A
 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. D 10. C
- II.** 1. A 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. D

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. D 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. D
 6. C 7. D 8. C 9. A 10. B
- II.** 1. immorality 2. irregularity 3. inequality 4. discomforts
 5. misfortune 6. criminal 7. endangered 8. unpleasant
 9. arrival 10. Admission 11. unfaithful 12. unrecognizable
 13. unconvincing 14. memorable 15. warmth
- III.** 1. We don't know where to put the sofa.
 2. The rules didn't specify who to speak in case of an emergency.
 3. Mai wondered how to ride the scooter.
 4. Let us decide when to start the project.
 5. Could you tell me where to find a good hotel?
 6. We must find out what to do next.
 7. A good dictionary tells you how to pronounce the words.
 8. We are not sure who to meet at the entrance.
 9. I can't remember when to turn off the oven.
 10. Do you know what to look for?

C. READING

- I.** 1. around 2. seems 3. see 4. earth
 5. light 6. between 7. becomes 8. month
- II.** 1. A 2. B 3. C 4. D 5. A
 6. B 7. C 8. D 9. D 10. B
- III.** 1. A 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. C

D. WRITING

- I.** 1. cheerful 2. restless 3. forgetful 4. thoughtless 5. useless
 6. careless 7. colourful 8. joyful 9. fearless 10. friendless
- II.** 1. Mr. Smith asked where I was going on my vacation that year.
 2. She asked if the mechanics had finished repairing his car.
 3. She asked why David had been looking so miserable lately.
 4. I asked my friend if anyone had been hurt in the car accident the previous month.

5. She asked me how old I was then.
6. She asked her if she had been to town that day
7. John asked Mary how long it took her to get to London.
8. The policeman asked the little girl what her name was.
9. Mr. Green asked his secretary who she had talked to a few minutes before.
10. Paul asked Mary if she could swim.
11. He asked where he could find her in that town.
12. She asked her son if he knew which the cup was he had used.
13. Helen asked Jack what he had said.
14. She asked him why he hadn't got up early this morning.
15. He asked if it would rain that night.
16. Dr. Nelson said that every weekend, the astronauts could have private video-conferences with their families on the Earth.
17. Nick asked his teacher if/ whether the astronauts had ever forgotten anything from the Earth.
18. The teacher told Nick that the astronauts on the ISS used a 3-D printer on board to print certain objects.
19. Nga asked Dr. Nelson where we/ they could look for life.
20. The teacher said that Ganymede, the largest moon of Jupiter, had a large salt water ocean.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

- | | | | | | |
|----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| I. | 1. B | 2. B | 3. B | 4. D | 5. A |
| | 6. B | 7. B | 8. A | 9. C | 10. B |
| | 11. A | 12. C | 13. A | 14. D | 15. A |
| | 16. C | 17. A | 18. B | 19. A | 20. D |
-
- | | | | | | |
|-----|------|------|------|------|-------|
| II. | 1. C | 2. B | 3. A | 4. B | 5. D |
| | 6. A | 7. C | 8. B | 9. C | 10. D |
-
- | | | | | | |
|------|-----------|----------|-----------|--------------|-------------|
| III. | 1. in | 2. there | 3. trip | 4. practical | 5. valuable |
| | 6. moving | 7. its | 8. expect | 9. Such | 10. who |
-
- | | | | | | |
|-----|---|--|--|--|--|
| IV. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. He said to her she was his friend. 2. Johnny said to his mother he didn't know how to do that exercise. 3. My brother advised me not to come back before one o'clock. 4. Mrs Brown told her daughter to cook it in butter. 5. The pupils asked their teacher to give them better marks. 6. My friend asked me if I was going to leave the day after. 7. My mother asked me if I had done my homework. 8. I asked Bill what time he had gone to bed the night before. 9. Paul said that he had to go home then. 10. The policeman said that there was an accident. 11. The children said that they were waiting for the school bus. | | | | |
|-----|---|--|--|--|--|

12. Mr Brown asked me if I had to go then.
13. Tom asked if I was going to visit my aunt the next day.
14. The teacher asked his students to listen to him and not to make any noise.
15. Mary told Helen she was tired of eating fish.
16. Peter told the sun always rises/rose in the east.
17. Sammy told Jean that he didn't steal/hadn't stolen her coat the day before.
18. Miss Lan asked us to do our homework every day.
19. Billy asked his teacher if they would read the story.
20. Vicky said she didn't know where Alice was.
21. Mary asked me if I could tell her why I was so sad.
22. Jane asked her friend to find out when he last wrote to her.
23. She urged her daughter to decide what she wanted to do.

- V.** 1. A 2. D 3. C 4. D 5. B
- VI.** 1. C 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. B
- VII.** 1. will have discovered 2. will be looking for 3. will have travelled
 4. will have improved 5. will have developed 6. are
 7. will come 8. have wondered 9. will be taking
 10. will have learned
- VIII.** 1. Aliens may have a hard container for the brain.
 2. They may have two eyes, a nose and a mouth like us.
 3. Their eyes might be bug-like, and the nose might not be in the middle of the face.
 4. Besides teeth, aliens might have other systems of eating.
 5. They may have two arms, but the arms may have suckers to pick up small objects.
 6. Their hand might have only three or four fingers.
 7. The number of joints might be greater, and the direction of bending might be different.

FINAL TERM TEST

A. PHONETICS

- I.** 1. melancholy 2. gregarious 3. carpentry 4. sanctuary 5. vehicle
- II.** 1. C 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. D

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I.** 1. B 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. A
 6. C 7. A 8. B 9. B 10. B
 11. A 12. C 13. D 14. C 15. A
 16. D 17. B 18. C 19. C 20. B
- II.** 1. C [because] 2. D [were] 3. B [enough water]
 4. C [them] 5. A [suggests that]

- III.**
- | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. is sleeping | 2. sets | 3. goes |
| 4. does not rain | 5. are having | 6. drinks |
| 7. returns | 8. is writing | 9. is coming |
| 10. moves | 11. smells | 12. taught |
| 13. fell / got | 14. was sitting | 15. was |
| 16. took | 17. haven't spoken | 18. have tries/ haven't succeeded |
| 19. have not seen | 20. has done | 21. had started |
| 22. will be | 23. had already begun | 24. will you |
| 25. will be | 26. am having | 27. were singing / came |
| 28. were.... doing | 29. did spend | 30. was speaking |
- IV.**
- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|--------------|------------------|
| 1. breathless | 2. uncontrollably | 3. waterless | 4. weightless |
| 5. terrorist | 6. appropriately | 7. invisible | 8. communicative |

C. READING

- I.**
- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. D | 4. C | 5. B |
|------|------|------|------|------|
- II.**
- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. B | 3. C | 4. D | 5. D |
| 6. A | 7. B | 8. C | 9. D | 10. B |

D. WRITING

- I.**
- Tom asked Linda to photocopy that report for him.
 - She told her friend not to wait for her.
 - My daughter enjoys listening to my story before going to bed.
 - Jessica used to be my classmate.
 - The teacher said (that) I/we should study harder this/that semester.
- II.**
- | | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|---------------|
| 1. play → playing | 2. Was → Did | 3. do → doing |
| 4. went → go | 5. weren't → didn't | 6. have → had |
| 7. broke → break | 8. go → went | 9. am → was |
| 10. turn → turned | | |
- III.**
- The subway to Times Square leaves after each 40 minutes.
 - Light pollution can cause headaches.
 - The mudslide buried five trucks and a warehouse this early morning.
 - The leakage of nuclear power plant has caused radioactive pollution.
 - The victims of tsunami are being provided first aid by the rescue team.

CONTENT

Unit 1: LEISURE ACTIVITIES	5
Unit 2: LIFE IN THE COUNTRYSIDE	16
Unit 3: PEOPLES OF VIETNAM	28
Unit 4: OUR CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS	40
Unit 5: FESTIVALS IN VIETNAM	52
Unit 6: FOLK TALES	64
MIDDLE TERM TEST	76
Unit 7: POPULATION	83
Unit 8: ENGLISH SPEAKING COUNTRIES	95
Unit 9: NATURAL DISASTERS	104
Unit 10: COMMUNICATION	117
Unit 11: SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY	127
Unit 12: LIFE ON OTHER PLANETS	139
FINAL TERM TEST	151
ANSWER KEYS	157